

(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property  
Organization  
International Bureau



(10) International Publication Number

WO 2015/066593 A1

(43) International Publication Date  
7 May 2015 (07.05.2015)

WIPO | PCT

(51) International Patent Classification:

A61K 31/295 (2006.01)

(21) International Application Number:

PCT/US2014/063643

(22) International Filing Date:

3 November 2014 (03.11.2014)

(25) Filing Language:

English

(26) Publication Language:

English

(30) Priority Data:

61/899,866 4 November 2013 (04.11.2013) US

(71) Applicant: KERYX BIOPHARMACEUTICALS, INC.  
[US/US]; 750 Lexington Avenue, 20th Floor, New York,  
NY 10022 (US).

(72) Inventors: PORADOSU, Enrique; 42 Verndale Street,  
Apartment 1, Brookline, MA 02446 (US). BENTSUR,  
Ron; 212 Highwood Avenue, Tenafly, NJ 07670 (US).  
OLIVIERO, James, F., III; 30 West Street, Apartment  
32E, New York, NY 10004 (US).

(74) Agents: CHHEDA, Jennifer, J. et al.; Jones Day, 222  
East 41st Street, New York, NY 10017-6702 (US).

(81) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of national protection available): AE, AG, AL, AM, AO, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BH, BN, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CL, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DO, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, GT, HN, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IR, IS, JP, KE, KG, KN, KP, KR, KZ, LA, LC, LK, LR, LS, LU, LY, MA, MD, ME, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MY, MZ, NA, NG, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PA, PE, PG, PH, PL, PT, QA, RO, RS, RU, RW, SA, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SM, ST, SV, SY, TH, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, ZA, ZM, ZW.

(84) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of regional protection available): ARIPO (BW, GH, GM, KE, LR, LS, MW, MZ, NA, RW, SD, SL, ST, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, RU, TJ, TM), European (AL, AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU, LV, MC, MK, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, RS, SE, SI, SK, SM, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, KM, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published:

— with international search report (Art. 21(3))



WO 2015/066593 A1

(54) Title: FERRIC CITRATE FOR REDUCING CARDIAC FAILURE IN CHRONIC KIDNEY DISEASE PATIENTS

(57) Abstract: Methods of administering ferric citrate to reduce and/or control serum phosphorus levels, increase serum bicarbonate levels, improve one or more iron storage parameters (e.g., increase serum ferritin levels, increase transferrin saturation (TSAT), increase hemoglobin concentration), increase iron absorption, maintain iron stores, treat iron deficiency, treat anemia, reduce the need for IV iron, reduce the need for erythropoiesis-stimulating agents (ESAs), and/or reduce mortality and morbidity related to adverse cardiac events in chronic kidney disease patients, are disclosed.

## FERRIC CITRATE FOR REDUCING CARDIAC FAILURE IN CHRONIC KIDNEY DISEASE PATIENTS

5

This application claims priority to U.S. provisional application Serial No. 61/899,866, filed November 4, 2013, which is incorporated herein in its entirety.

### FIELD

10 Methods and compositions disclosed herein relate generally to the use of ferric citrate to treat chronic kidney disease (CKD) patients and related complications.

### BACKGROUND

15 Chronic kidney disease (CKD) is a gradual and progressive loss of the ability of the kidneys to excrete wastes, concentrate urine, and conserve electrolytes. The U.S. National Kidney Foundation defines chronic kidney disease according to the presence or absence of kidney damage and the level of kidney function, regardless of the type (clinical diagnosis) of kidney disease. The primary measure of kidney function is glomerular filtration rate (GFR), which is often estimated as creatinine clearance from serum and urine creatinine concentrations.

20 Chronic kidney disease or failure is defined as having a GFR less than 60 ml/min for three months or more. The U.S. National Kidney Foundation has suggested a five stage classification of renal dysfunction based on GFR:

#### Stages of renal dysfunction (adapted from National Kidney Foundation—K/DOQI)

Stage	Description	Creatinine Clearance (~GFR: ml/min/1.73 m <sup>2</sup> )	Metabolic consequences
1	Normal or increased GFR—People at increased risk or with early renal damage	>90	-
2	Early renal	60-89	Concentration of parathyroid

Stage	Description	Creatinine Clearance (~GFR: ml/min/1.73 m <sup>2</sup> )	Metabolic consequences
	insufficiency		hormone starts to rise (GFR~60-80)
3	Moderate renal failure (chronic renal failure)	30-59	Decrease in calcium absorption (GFR<50) Lipoprotein activity falls Malnutrition Onset of left ventricular hypertrophy Onset of anemia
4	Severe renal failure	15-29	Triglyceride concentrations start to rise Hyperphosphatemia Metabolic acidosis Tendency to hyperkalemia
5	End stage renal disease (Uremia)	<15	Azotaemia develops

As indicated in the table above, stage 1 is the least severe and stage 5, or ESRD, the most severe. In the early stages of CKD, *e.g.* stages 1-4, dialysis is typically not required. Therefore, patients experiencing the earlier stages of CKD are described as having non-dialysis dependent chronic kidney disease. Such patients are also commonly referred to as non-dialysis chronic kidney disease (ND-CKD) patients. Anemia typically first appears in CKD Stage 3 when the GFR is less than 60 cc/min, long before dialysis is necessary, although anemia may appear at any stage of CKD. At stage 5, a patient may require dialysis treatment several times per week. Once the degeneration process of the kidney begins, the kidney functions in CKD deteriorate irreversibly toward end stage renal disease (ESRD, stage 5). Patients suffering from ESRD cannot survive without dialysis or kidney transplantation.

According to the U.S. National Kidney Foundation, approximately 26 million American adults have CKD and millions of others are at increased risk. Patients experiencing the earlier stages of CKD typically incur increased medical costs of U.S. \$14,000 to U.S. \$22,000 per patient per year, compared to the age-matched, non-CKD general population. However, there is growing evidence that some of the increased costs and adverse outcomes associated with CKD can be prevented or delayed by preventive measures, early detection, and early treatment.

Iron deficiency and anemia are common complications of CKD, including ESRD.

Anemia is the clinical manifestation of a decrease in circulating red blood cell mass and usually is detected by low blood hemoglobin concentration. The properly functioning kidney produces erythropoietin, a hormone that stimulates proliferation and differentiation of red blood cell

5 precursors, which ultimately leads to erythropoiesis (red blood cell production). In the CKD kidney, erythropoietin production is often impaired, leading to erythropoietin deficiency and the concomitant deficiency in erythropoiesis. Anemia is associated with adverse cardiovascular outcomes, ESRD, mortality and diminished quality of life (Macdougall, *Curr Med Res Opin* (2010) 26:473-482). The prevalence of anemia in CKD increases as kidney function decreases.

10 Approximately 50% of non-dialysis chronic kidney disease patients are anemic, and by the time CKD patients start dialysis, up to 70% are anemic (Macdougall, *supra*, and McClellan *et al.*, *Curr Med Res Opin* (2004) 20:1501-1510). The leading cause of death in patients with chronic kidney disease (CKD) is cardiovascular disease (accounting for approximately 50% of deaths).

15 (US Renal Data System. *Atlas of End-Stage Renal Disease in the United States. National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases*, Bethesda, MD, (2000)).

Iron deficiency is a significant contributor to anemia in CKD patients. The estimated prevalence ranges from 25 to 70% (Hsu, *et al.*, *J Am Soc Nephrol* (2002) 13: 2783-2786; Gotloib *et al.*, *J Nephrol* (2006) 19: 161-167; Mafra, *et al.*, *J Ren Nutr* (2002) 12: 38-41; Kalantar-Zadeh, *et al.*, *Am J Kidney Dis* (1995) 26: 292-299; and Post, *et al.*, *Int Urol Nephrol* (2006) 38:

20 719-723). The causes include decreased intake or absorption of iron, iron sequestration as a result of inflammation, blood loss, and increased iron use for red blood cell production in response to erythropoiesis stimulating agents (ESAs) (Fishbane, *et al.*, *Am J Kidney Dis* (1997) 29: 319-333; Kooistra, *et al.*, *Nephrol Dial Transplant* (1998) 13: 82-88; and Akmal, *et al.*, *Clin Nephrol* (1994) 42: 198-202). Depending on CKD stage, 20-70% of CKD patients exhibit low

25 iron indices (Quinbi *et al.*, *Nephrol Dial Transplant* (2011) 26:1599-1607). More than 1 million CKD stage 3 or 4 patients in the U.S. are estimated to suffer from iron deficiency. The presence of either low iron stores ("absolute" iron deficiency) or inadequate iron available to meet the demand for erythropoiesis ("functional" iron deficiency) correlates significantly with reduced hemoglobin levels in CKD patients. Iron deficiency can arise from any one or more factors 30 including, for example, insufficient iron from food intake, increased iron utilization, poor

gastrointestinal iron absorption, and generalized malabsorption due to renal failure and bacterial overgrowth, and gastrointestinal bleeding (Macdougall, *supra*).

The current standard of care for anemia and/or iron deficiency in CKD patients is administration of erythropoiesis-stimulating agents (ESAs) and/or iron supplementation. The 5 National Kidney Foundation Kidney Disease Outcomes Quality Initiative guidelines recommend either oral or intravenous iron for patients who have CKD stages 1 to 5 and are not on dialysis (see "Using iron agents: KDOQI clinical practice guidelines and clinical practice recommendations for anemia in chronic kidney disease," *Am J Kidney Dis* (2006) 47: S58–S70). The ferric form of iron (also known as iron(III) or  $Fe^{3+}$ ) has long been known to have poor 10 bioavailability when administered orally. Therefore, oral formulations for iron supplementation in CKD patients typically contain the ferrous form of iron (also known as iron(II) or  $Fe^{2+}$ ). Several ferrous oral iron preparations are available for treatment including ferrous gluconate, ferrous fumarate, and ferrous sulfate. The most common oral iron supplement is ferrous sulfate, which can be given up to three times daily in order to provide an adequate dose for treating iron- 15 deficient CKD patients. However, in some CKD patients, oral iron is poorly tolerated because of adverse side effects, or is ineffective in maintaining adequate body stores of iron. Side effects typically include gastrointestinal problems, such as diarrhea, nausea, bloating and abdominal discomfort. Additionally, because of the frequency in which they are typically given, oral ferrous forms pose a tablet burden on patients and have significant negative gastrointestinal side 20 effects, which lead to non-compliance with oral treatment regimens (Mehdi *et al.*, *supra*).

An alternative is to administer intravenous iron to CKD patients. Some studies have shown that intravenous iron formulations are more effective than either oral ferric iron supplements or oral ferrous iron supplements for treating iron deficiency and/or anemia in CKD patients (Mehdi *et al.*, *supra*). Effective intravenous formulations for the treatment of CKD 25 patients include ferric carboxymaltose, ferumoxytol, ferric gluconate, iron sucrose, and iron dextran. However, intravenous iron is associated with short-term risks such as anaphylaxis and death, as well as with long-term toxicity, including the development of atherosclerosis, infection, and increased mortality (Quinibi *Arzneimittelforschung* (2010) 60:399-412). Further, many CKD clinics, particularly community sites, are ill-equipped to administer intravenous iron 30 because they lack the infrastructure of a dialysis center. This has left a majority of CKD iron-deficient patients without intravenous iron treatment.

Thus, there is need to develop improved methods for treatment of CKD patients.

## SUMMARY

Certain aspects of the disclosure provide clinically safe and effective phosphate binders  
5 that can be used to reduce and/or control serum phosphorus levels, increase serum bicarbonate levels, improve one or more iron storage parameters (e.g., increase serum ferritin levels, increase transferrin saturation (TSAT), increase hemoglobin concentration) increase iron absorption, maintain iron stores, treat iron deficiency, treat anemia, reduce the need for IV iron and/or reduce the need for erythropoiesis-stimulating agents (ESAs) in CKD patients, including non-dialysis  
10 CKD (ND-CKD) patients and end state renal disease (ESRD) patients. In certain aspects, the phosphate binder is clinically safe and effective for long term administration to CKD patients, for example up to and including at least 56 weeks of continuous administration.

In accordance with certain embodiments of the disclosure, a candidate for administrative marketing approval as a phosphate binder is the ferric citrate disclosed herein (also known as  
15 KRX-0502 (ferric citrate), see Example 1). Pre-clinical studies have demonstrated the ability of the ferric citrate disclosed herein to bind dietary phosphorus, to decrease intestinal absorption of dietary phosphorus and to reduce serum phosphate levels (Mathew, *et al.*, *J Am Soc Nephrol* (2006) 17: 357A; Voormolen, *et al.*, *Nephrol Dial Transplant* (2007) 22: 2909–2916; and Tonelli  
20 *et al.*, *Circulation* (2005) 112: 2627–2633). Four clinical studies of the ferric citrate disclosed herein (e.g., KRX-0502 (ferric citrate)) in patients with ESRD have been conducted and reported to the U.S. Food and Drug Administration as part of the KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) Investigational New Drug (IND) submission. One of those studies, a Phase 3 long term study (described herein), has confirmed that the ferric citrate disclosed herein (also known as KRX-0502) demonstrates a highly statistically significant change in serum phosphorus versus placebo  
25 over a four-week Efficacy Assessment Period and can increase ferritin and transferrin saturation (TSAT) and reduce the use of intravenous iron and erythropoiesis-stimulating agents in ESRD patients when compared to active control agents over a 52-week Safety Assessment Period.

In accordance with the present disclosure, it has been discovered that the ferric citrate disclosed herein can be used as a clinically safe and effective phosphate binder to control and/or  
30 reduce serum phosphorus levels, increase serum bicarbonate levels, improve one or more iron storage parameters (e.g., increase serum ferritin levels, increase transferrin saturation (TSAT),

increase hemoglobin concentration, increase iron absorption), maintain iron stores, treat iron deficiency, treat anemia, reduce the need for IV iron and/or reduce the need for erythropoiesis-stimulating agents (ESAs) in CKD patients, including non-dialysis CKD (ND-CKD) patients and end stage renal disease (ESRD) patients.

5 In a one aspect, the present disclosure provides methods of reducing and/or controlling serum phosphorus in a patient in need thereof. In some embodiments, the methods comprise orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, e.g., an end-stage renal disease patient, at a dose of ferric iron ranging from 210 mg – 2,520 mg, wherein the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of 2.00 – 2.50 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is  
10 administered in a 1 gram tablet dosage form, each dosage form comprising 210 mg of ferric iron. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to 18 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to and including 12 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is administered 6 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is administered 6 to 12 tablet dosage forms per day. In some  
15 embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered within 1 hour of the ingestion of a meal or snack by the patient. In some embodiments, the patient was treated with thrice-weekly hemodialysis or with peritoneal dialysis for at least 3 months prior to administration of the ferric citrate. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate has a BET active surface area greater than about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 20 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In  
20 some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area is selected from 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g, 28.87 m<sup>2</sup>/g and 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 30 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 40 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate has an intrinsic dissolution rate of 1.88 – 4.0 mg/cm<sup>2</sup>/min.

25 In another aspect, the present disclosure provides methods of reducing serum phosphorus in a patient in need thereof. In some embodiments, the methods comprise orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, e.g., an end-stage renal disease patient, at a dose of ferric iron ranging from 210 mg – 2,520 mg, wherein the ferric citrate provides: a mean reduction in serum phosphorus selected from 1.90, 1.91, 1.92, 1.93, 1.94, 1.95, 1.96, 1.97, 1.98, 1.99, 2.00, 2.01,  
30 2.02, 2.03, 2.04, 2.05, 2.06, 2.07, 2.08, 2.09 and 2.10 mg/dl when administered for a period of 12 weeks; a mean reduction in serum phosphorus selected from 2.10, 2.11, 2.12, 2.13, 2.14, 2.15,

2.16, 2.17, 2.18, 2.19, 2.20, 2.21, 2.22, 2.23, 2.24 and 2.25 mg/dl when administered for a period of 24 weeks; a mean reduction in serum phosphorus selected from 2.10, 2.11, 2.12, 2.13, 2.14, 2.15, 2.16, 2.17, 2.18, 2.19 and 2.20 mg/dl when administered for a period of 36 weeks; a mean reduction in serum phosphorus selected from 1.95, 1.96, 1.97, 1.98, 1.99, 2.00, 2.01, 2.02, 2.03, 5 2.04, 2.05, 2.06, 2.07, 2.08, 2.09, 2.10, 2.11, 2.12, 2.13, 2.14 and 2.15 mg/dl when administered for a period of 48 weeks; and a mean reduction in serum phosphorus selected from 1.95, 1.96, 1.97, 1.98, 1.99, 2.00, 2.01, 2.02, 2.03, 2.04, 2.05, 2.06, 2.07, 2.08, 2.09, 2.10, 2.11, 2.12, 2.13, 2.14, 2.15, 2.16, 2.17, 2.18, 2.19, 2.20, 2.21, 2.22, 2.23, 2.24, 2.25, 2.26, 2.27, 2.28, 2.29 and 10 2.30 mg/dl when administered for a period of 52 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of 2.00 mg/dl when administered for a period of 12 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of 2.20 mg/dl when administered for a period of 24 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of 2.20 mg/dl when administered for a period of 36 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of 2.10 mg/dl when administered for a period of 48 weeks. In 15 some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of 2.10 mg/dl when administered for a period of 52 weeks.

In another aspect, the present disclosure provides a method for controlling serum phosphorus levels in a patient with chronic kidney disease receiving intravenous iron, 20 comprising (a) orally administering ferric citrate to the patient; (b) assessing the patient for changes in serum phosphorus levels and changes in one or more iron storage parameters, such as serum ferritin levels, TSAT values and hemoglobin concentration; and (c) reducing the intravenous iron the patient is receiving by 1-100%, 10-50%, 10-25%, 30-60%, 25-50%, 50-75%, 75-100%, 80-95%, or 90-95% based on the one or more iron storage parameters in the 25 patient. In a specific embodiment, the intravenous iron the patient is reduced if one or more iron storage parameters in the patient exceeds levels found in non-CKD patients (e.g., healthy humans). For example, if the TSAT values are 50% or higher and/or the serum ferritin levels are approximately 1000 micrograms/L or higher, approximately 1200 micrograms/L or higher, approximately 1500 micrograms/L or higher, approximately 1800 or higher, or 2000 30 micrograms/L or higher, then the amount of ferric citrate the patient is receiving might be reduced. In certain embodiments, one or more iron storage parameters are assessed in the patient

prior to administering the ferric citrate. In certain embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered to the patient as a tablet. In specific embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered to the patient as a tablet, wherein each tablet contains approximately 210 mg of ferric iron. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to and including 12 tablets per day. In certain 5 embodiments, the patient is administered 6 to 12 tablets per day. In specific embodiments, the chronic kidney disease patient is receiving dialysis. In some embodiments, the chronic kidney disease patient is not receiving dialysis. In certain embodiments, the patient was diagnosed with stage 1, 2, or 3 of chronic kidney disease. In other embodiments, the patient was diagnosed with stage 4 or 5 of chronic kidney disease.

10 In another aspect, the present disclosure provides a method for controlling serum phosphorus levels in a patient with chronic kidney disease receiving intravenous iron, comprising (a) assessing the serum ferritin levels and/or transferring saturation (TSAT) values in the patient; (b) orally administering ferric citrate to a patient with serum ferritin levels of less than 500 micrograms/L and/or TSAT values of less than 50% (in some embodiments, the patient 15 has serum ferritin levels between 500 micrograms/L and 300 micrograms/L, 450 micrograms/L and 350 micrograms/L, or 400 micrograms/L to 300 micrograms/L, and/or TSAT values between 25% and 50%, 25% and 50%, 20% and 30%, 15% and 30%, or 25% and 15%); (c) assessing the patient for changes in serum phosphorus levels, serum ferritin levels, and TSAT values; and (d) reducing the intravenous iron the patient is receiving by 1-100%, 10-50%, 10-25%, 30-60%, 25- 20 50%, 50-75%, 75-100%, 80-95%, or 90-95% based on the serum ferritin levels and/or TSAT values in the patient. In a specific embodiment, the intravenous iron the patient is reduced if the serum ferritin levels in the patient are above 500 micrograms/L and/or the TSAT value is approximately 50% or higher (e.g., 55%, 60%, 65%, or higher). In certain embodiments, one or more iron storage parameters are assessed in the patient prior to administering the ferric citrate. 25 In certain embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered to the patient as a tablet. In specific embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered to the patient as a tablet, wherein each tablet contains approximately 210 mg of ferric iron. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to and including 12 tablets per day. In certain embodiments, the patient is administered 6 to 12 tablets per day. In specific embodiments, the chronic kidney disease patient is receiving dialysis. In some embodiments, the chronic kidney disease patient is not receiving dialysis. In 30

certain embodiments, the patient was diagnosed with stage 1, 2, or 3 of chronic kidney disease. In other embodiments, the patient was diagnosed with stage 4 or 5 of chronic kidney disease.

In another aspect, the present disclosure provides a method for controlling serum phosphorus levels in a patient with chronic kidney disease receiving intravenous iron, comprising (a) assessing the serum ferritin levels and/or transferring saturation (TSAT) values in the patient; (b) orally administering ferric citrate to a patient with serum ferritin levels of less than 800 micrograms/L and/or TSAT values of less than 50% (in some embodiments, the patient has serum ferritin levels between 800 micrograms/L and 500 micrograms/L, 600 micrograms/L and 350 micrograms/L or 500 micrograms/L to 300 micrograms/L, and/or TSAT values between 5 25% and 50%, 20% and 30%, 15% and 30% or 25% and 15%); (c) assessing the patient for changes in serum phosphorus levels, serum ferritin levels, and TSAT values; and (d) reducing the intravenous iron the patient is receiving by 1-100%, 10-50%, 10-25%, 30-60%, 25-50%, 50-75%, 75-100%, 80-95%, or 90-95% based on the serum ferritin levels and/or TSAT values in the patient. In a specific embodiment, the intravenous iron the patient is reduced if the serum ferritin levels in the patient are above 800 micrograms/L and/or the TSAT value is approximately 50% or higher (e.g., 55%, 60%, 65%, or higher). In certain embodiments, one or more iron storage parameters are assessed in the patient prior to administering the ferric citrate. In certain embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered to the patient as a tablet. In specific embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered to the patient as a tablet, wherein each tablet 10 contains approximately 210 mg of ferric iron. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to and including 12 tablets per day. In certain embodiments, the patient is administered 6 to 12 tablets per day. In specific embodiments, the chronic kidney disease patient is receiving dialysis. In some embodiments, the chronic kidney disease patient is not receiving dialysis. In certain embodiments, the patient was diagnosed with stage 1, 2, or 3 of chronic kidney disease. 15 20 25 In other embodiments, the patient was diagnosed with stage 4 or 5 of chronic kidney disease.

In another aspect, the present disclosure provides a method for controlling serum phosphorus levels in a patient with chronic kidney disease receiving intravenous iron, comprising (a) assessing the serum ferritin levels and/or transferring saturation (TSAT) values in the patient; (b) orally administering ferric citrate to a patient with serum ferritin levels of less 30 than 1000 micrograms/L and/or TSAT values of less than 50% (in some embodiments, the patient has serum ferritin levels between 1000 micrograms/L and 500 micrograms/L, 1000

micrograms/L and 800 micrograms/L or 1000 micrograms/L to 300 micrograms/L, and/or TSAT values between 25% and 50%, 20% and 30%, 15% and 30% or 25% and 15%); (c) assessing the patient for changes in serum phosphorus levels, serum ferritin levels, and TSAT values; and (d) reducing the intravenous iron the patient is receiving by 1-100%, 10-50%, 10-25%, 30-60%, 25-50%, 50-75%, 75-100%, 80-95%, or 90-95% based on the serum ferritin levels and/or TSAT values in the patient. In a specific embodiment, the intravenous iron the patient is reduced if the serum ferritin levels in the patient are above 1000 micrograms/L and/or the TSAT value is approximately 50% or higher (e.g., 55%, 60%, 65%, or higher). In certain embodiments, one or more iron storage parameters are assessed in the patient prior to administering the ferric citrate.

10 In certain embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered to the patient as a tablet. In specific embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered to the patient as a tablet, wherein each tablet contains approximately 210 mg of ferric iron. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to and including 12 tablets per day. In certain embodiments, the patient is administered 6 to 12 tablets per day. In specific embodiments, the chronic kidney disease patient is receiving dialysis. In some embodiments, the chronic kidney disease patient is not receiving dialysis. In certain embodiments, the patient was diagnosed with stage 1, 2, or 3 of chronic kidney disease. In other embodiments, the patient was diagnosed with stage 4 or 5 of chronic kidney disease.

15 In another aspect, the present disclosure provides a method for controlling serum phosphorus levels in a patient with chronic kidney disease, comprising: (a) orally administering ferric citrate to the patient; (b) assessing the patient for changes in serum phosphorus levels and changes in one or more iron storage parameters, such as serum ferritin levels, hemoglobin concentration, and TSAT values; and (c) increasing the number of ferric citrate tablets administered to the patient to maintain serum phosphorous levels of 3.5 mg/dL to 5.5 mg/dL. In certain embodiments, one or more iron storage parameters are assessed in the patient prior to 20 administering the ferric citrate. In some embodiments, the amount of ferric citrate the patient is receiving is reduced if one or more iron storage parameters exceeds levels found in non-CKD patients (e.g., healthy humans). For example, if the TSAT values are 50% or higher and/or the serum ferritin levels are approximately 1000 micrograms/L or higher, approximately 1200 micrograms/L or higher, approximately 1500 micrograms/L or higher, approximately 1800 or 25 higher, or 2000 micrograms/L or higher, then the amount of ferric citrate the patient is receiving might be reduced. In certain embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered to the patient as a 30

tablet. In specific embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered to the patient as a tablet, wherein each tablet contains approximately 210 mg of ferric iron. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to and including 12 tablets per day. In certain embodiments, the patient is administered 6 to 12 tablets per day. In specific embodiments, the chronic kidney 5 disease patient is receiving dialysis. In some embodiments, the chronic kidney disease patient is not receiving dialysis. In certain embodiments, the patient was diagnosed with stage 1, 2, or 3 of chronic kidney disease. In other embodiments, the patient was diagnosed with stage 4 or 5 of chronic kidney disease.

In another aspect, the present disclosure provides a method for controlling serum 10 phosphorus levels in a patient with chronic kidney disease, comprising: (a) assessing serum ferritin levels and transferrin saturation (TSAT) values in the patient; (b) orally administering ferric citrate to a chronic kidney disease patient with serum ferritin levels less than 2000 micrograms/L, less than 1800 micrograms/L, less than 1500 micrograms/L, less than 1000 micrograms/L, less than 800 micrograms/L, or less than 500 micrograms/L and TSAT values 15 less than 50%; (c) assessing the patient for changes in serum phosphorus levels, serum ferritin levels and TSAT values while receiving the ferric citrate tablet; and (d) increasing the number of ferric citrate tablets administered to the patient to maintain serum phosphorous levels of 3.5 mg/dL to 5.5 mg/dL. In some embodiments, the patient administered the ferric citrate has serum ferritin levels between 2000 micrograms/L and 1500 micrograms/L, 1500 micrograms/L and 20 1000 micrograms/L, 1000 micrograms/L and 800 micrograms/L, 800 micrograms/L and 500 micrograms/L, 1500 micrograms/L and 500 micrograms/L, or 1000 micrograms/L and 500 micrograms/L, and/or TSAT values between 25% and 50%, 20% and 30%, 15% and 30% or 25% and 15%. In some embodiments, the patient administered the ferric citrate is not receiving 25 intravenous iron and/or erythropoiesis-stimulating agents. In certain embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered to the patient as a tablet. In specific embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered to the patient as a tablet, wherein each tablet contains approximately 210 mg of ferric iron. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up 12 tablets per day. In certain 30 embodiments, the patient is administered 6 to 12 tablets per day. In specific embodiments, the chronic kidney disease patient is receiving dialysis. In some embodiments, the chronic kidney disease patient is not receiving dialysis. In certain embodiments, the patient was diagnosed with

stage 1, 2, or 3 of chronic kidney disease. In other embodiments, the patient was diagnosed with stage 4 or 5 of chronic kidney disease.

In another aspect, the present disclosure provides a method for controlling serum phosphorus levels in a patient with chronic kidney disease receiving intravenous iron, comprising: (a) assessing serum ferritin levels and transferrin saturation (TSAT) values in the patient; (b) orally administering ferric citrate to a chronic kidney disease patient with serum ferritin levels less than 800 micrograms/L and/or TSAT values less than 50% (in some embodiments, the patient has serum ferritin levels between 800 micrograms/L and 500 micrograms/L, 600 micrograms/L and 350 micrograms/L or 500 micrograms/L to 300 micrograms/L, and/or TSAT values between 25% and 50%, 20% and 30%, 15% and 30% or 25% and 15%); (c) assessing the patient for changes in serum phosphorus levels, serum ferritin levels and TSAT values while receiving the ferric citrate tablet; and (d) increasing the number of ferric citrate tablets administered to the patient to maintain serum phosphorous levels of 3.5 mg/dL to 5.5 mg/dL if the patient's serum ferritin levels are not above 800 micrograms/L and/or TSAT values are not above 50% (e.g., the TSAT values are 25%, 30%, 35%, 40% or 45%). In specific embodiments, in accordance with the methods the intravenous iron the chronic kidney disease patient is receiving is reduced by 1-100%, 10-50%, 10-25%, 30-60%, 25-50%, 50-75%, 75-100%, 80-95%, or 90-95% based on the serum ferritin levels and/or TSAT values in the patient. In a specific embodiment, the intravenous iron the patient is reduced if the serum ferritin levels in the patient are above 800 micrograms/L and/or TSAT values in the patient are approximately 50% or higher (e.g., 55%, 60%, 65%, or higher). In certain embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered to the patient as a tablet. In specific embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered to the patient as a tablet, wherein each tablet contains approximately 210 mg of ferric iron. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up 12 tablets per day. In certain embodiments, the patient is administered 6 to 12 tablets per day. In specific embodiments, the chronic kidney disease patient is receiving dialysis. In some embodiments, the chronic kidney disease patient is not receiving dialysis. In certain embodiments, the patient was diagnosed with stage 1, 2, or 3 of chronic kidney disease. In other embodiments, the patient was diagnosed with stage 4 or 5 of chronic kidney disease.

In another aspect, the present disclosure provides a method for controlling serum phosphorus levels in a patient with chronic kidney disease receiving intravenous iron,

comprising: (a) assessing serum ferritin levels and transferrin saturation (TSAT) values in the patient; (b) orally administering ferric citrate to a chronic kidney disease patient with serum ferritin levels less than 500 micrograms/L and/or TSAT values less than 50% (in some embodiments, the patient has serum ferritin levels between 500 micrograms/L and 300

5 micrograms/L, 450 micrograms/L and 350 micrograms/L, or 400 micrograms/L to 300 micrograms/L, and/or TSAT values between 25% and 50%, 25% and 50%, 20% and 30%, 15% and 30%, or 25% and 15%); (c) assessing the patient for changes in serum phosphorus levels, serum ferritin levels and TSAT values while receiving the ferric citrate tablet; and (d) increasing the number of ferric citrate tablets administered to the patient to maintain serum phosphorous

10 levels of 3.5 mg/dL to 5.5 mg/dL if the patient's serum ferritin levels are not above 500 micrograms/L and/or TSAT values are not above 50%. In specific embodiments, in accordance with the methods the intravenous iron the chronic kidney disease patient is receiving is reduced by 1-100%, 10-50%, 10-25%, 30-60%, 25-50%, 50-75%, 75-100%, 80-95%, or 90-95% based on the serum ferritin levels and/or TSAT values in the patient. In a specific embodiment, the

15 intravenous iron the patient is reduced if the serum ferritin levels in the patient are above 800 micrograms/L and/or TSAT values in the patient are approximately 50% or higher (e.g., 55%, 60%, 65%, or higher). In certain embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered to the patient as a tablet. In specific embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered to the patient as a tablet, wherein each tablet contains approximately 210 mg of ferric iron. In some embodiments, the

20 patient is administered up 12 tablets per day. In certain embodiments, the patient is administered 6 to 12 tablets per day. In specific embodiments, the chronic kidney disease patient is receiving dialysis. In some embodiments, the chronic kidney disease patient is not receiving dialysis. In certain embodiments, the patient was diagnosed with stage 1, 2, or 3 of chronic kidney disease. In other embodiments, the patient was diagnosed with stage 4 or 5 of chronic kidney disease.

25 In another aspect, the present disclosure provides a method for controlling serum phosphorus levels in a patient with chronic kidney disease receiving intravenous iron, comprising: (a) assessing serum ferritin levels and transferrin saturation (TSAT) values in the patient; (b) orally administering ferric citrate to a chronic kidney disease patient with serum ferritin levels less than 1000 micrograms/L and/or TSAT values less than 50% (in some

30 embodiments, the patient has serum ferritin levels between 1000 micrograms/L and 500 micrograms/L, 800 micrograms/L and 500 micrograms/L, or 500 micrograms/L to 300

micrograms/L, and/or TSAT values between 25% and 50%, 25% and 50%, 20% and 30%, 15% and 30%, or 25% and 15%); (c) assessing the patient for changes in serum phosphorus levels, serum ferritin levels and TSAT values while receiving the ferric citrate tablet; and (d) increasing the number of ferric citrate tablets administered to the patient to maintain serum phosphorous levels of 3.5 mg/dL to 5.5 mg/dL if the patient's serum ferritin levels are not above 1000 micrograms/L and/or TSAT values are not above 50%. In specific embodiments, in accordance with the methods the intravenous iron the chronic kidney disease patient is receiving is reduced by 1-100%, 10-50%, 10-25%, 30-60%, 25-50%, 50-75%, 75-100%, 80-95%, or 90-95% based on the serum ferritin levels and/or TSAT values in the patient. In a specific embodiment, the 10 intravenous iron the patient is reduced if the serum ferritin levels in the patient are above 1000 micrograms/L (e.g., 1200 micrograms/L, 1500 micrograms/L, 1800 micrograms/L or 2000 micrograms/L) and/or TSAT values in the patient are approximately 50% or higher (e.g., 55%, 60%, 65%, or higher). In certain embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered to the patient as a tablet. In specific embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered to the patient as a tablet, 15 wherein each tablet contains approximately 210 mg of ferric iron. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up 12 tablets per day. In certain embodiments, the patient is administered 6 to 12 tablets per day. In specific embodiments, the chronic kidney disease patient is receiving dialysis. In some embodiments, the chronic kidney disease patient is not receiving dialysis. In certain embodiments, the patient was diagnosed with stage 1, 2, or 3 of chronic kidney disease. 20 In other embodiments, the patient was diagnosed with stage 4 or 5 of chronic kidney disease.

In yet another aspect, the present disclosure provides methods of increasing serum bicarbonate in a patient in need thereof. In some embodiments, the methods comprise orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, e.g., an end-stage renal disease patient, at a dose of ferric iron ranging from 210 mg – 2,520 mg, wherein the ferric citrate provides an increase in 25 serum bicarbonate selected from 0.70, 0.71, 0.72, 0.73, 0.74, 0.75, 0.76, 0.77, 0.78, 0.79 and 0.80 mEq/L when administered for a period of at least 52 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum bicarbonate concentration of 0.71 mEq/L. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered in a 1 gram tablet dosage form, each dosage form comprising 210 mg of ferric iron. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to 18 30 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to and including 12 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is administered 6

tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is administered 6 to 12 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered within 1 hour of the ingestion of a meal or snack by the patient. In some embodiments, the patient was treated with thrice-weekly hemodialysis or with peritoneal dialysis for at least 3 months prior to 5 administration of the ferric citrate. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate has a BET active surface area greater than about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 20 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area is selected from 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g, 28.87 m<sup>2</sup>/g and 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the 10 BET active surface area is from about 30 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 40 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate has an intrinsic dissolution rate of 1.88 – 4.0 mg/cm<sup>2</sup>/min.

In yet another aspect, the present disclosure provides methods of maintaining iron stores in a patient in need thereof. In some embodiments, the methods comprise orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, e.g., a non-dialysis chronic kidney disease patient or an end stage 15 renal disease patient, in an amount ranging from about 1 g to about 18 g per day. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered in a 1 gram tablet dosage form. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to 18 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to and including 12 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is administered 6 to 12 tablet dosage forms per day. In some 20 embodiments, the ferric citrate has a BET active surface area greater than about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 20 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area is selected from 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g, 28.87 m<sup>2</sup>/g and 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some 25 embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 30 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 40 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate has an intrinsic dissolution rate of 1.88 – 4.0 mg/cm<sup>2</sup>/min.

In yet another aspect, the present disclosure provides methods of improving one or more iron storage parameters in a patient in need thereof. In some embodiments, the methods comprise orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, e.g., a non-dialysis chronic kidney 30 disease patient or an end stage renal disease patient, in an amount ranging from about 1 g to about 18 g per day. In some embodiments, the at least one iron storage parameter may be

selected from serum ferritin levels, transferrin saturation (TSAT), hemoglobin concentration, hematocrit, total iron-binding capacity, iron absorption levels, serum iron levels, liver iron levels, spleen iron levels, and combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered in a 1 gram tablet dosage form. In some embodiments, the patient is administered 5 up to 18 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to and including 12 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate has a BET active surface area greater than about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 20 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active 10 surface area is selected from 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g, 28.87 m<sup>2</sup>/g and 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 30 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 40 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate has an intrinsic dissolution rate of 1.88 – 4.0 mg/cm<sup>2</sup>/min.

In another embodiment, the at least one iron storage parameter is hematocrit, and improving comprises increasing the hematocrit of the patient. In other embodiments, the at least 15 one iron storage parameter is hemoglobin concentration, and improving comprises increasing the hemoglobin concentration of the patient. In yet other embodiments, the at least one iron storage parameter is total iron-binding capacity, and improving comprises decreasing the total iron-binding capacity of the patient. In yet other embodiments, the at least one iron storage parameter is transferrin saturation, and improving comprises increasing the transferrin saturation of the 20 patient. In yet other embodiments, the at least one iron storage parameter is serum iron levels, and improving comprises increasing the serum iron levels of the patient. In yet other embodiments, the at least one iron storage parameter is liver iron levels, and improving comprises increasing the liver iron levels of the patient. In yet other embodiments, the at least one iron storage parameter is spleen iron levels, and improving comprises increasing the spleen 25 iron levels of the patient. In yet other embodiments, the at least one iron storage parameter is serum ferritin levels, and improving comprises increasing the serum ferritin levels of the patient.

In yet another embodiment, the at least one iron storage parameter is serum ferritin levels, and the present disclosure provides methods of increasing serum ferritin in a patient in need thereof. In some embodiments, the methods comprise orally administering ferric citrate to a 30 CKD patient, e.g., an end-stage renal disease patient at a dose of ferric iron ranging from 210 mg – 2,520 mg, wherein the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin in the patient

selected from 150 – 310, 151 – 309, 152 – 308, 153 – 307, 154 – 306, 155 – 306, 155 – 305, 155 – 304, 155 – 303 and 155 – 302 ng/ml when administered for a period of at least 52 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of 150 – 305 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered in a 1 gram tablet dosage form, 5 each dosage form comprising 210 mg of ferric iron. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to 18 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to and including 12 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is administered 6 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered within 1 hour of the ingestion of a meal or snack by the patient. In some 10 embodiments, the patient was treated with thrice-weekly hemodialysis or with peritoneal dialysis for at least 3 months prior to administration of the ferric citrate. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate has a BET active surface area greater than about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 20 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, 15 the BET active surface area is selected from 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g, 28.87 m<sup>2</sup>/g and 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 30 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 40 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate has an intrinsic dissolution rate of 1.88 – 4.0 mg/cm<sup>2</sup>/min.

In yet another embodiment, the at least one iron storage parameter is transferrin saturation (TSAT), and the present disclosure provides methods of increasing transferrin 20 saturation (TSAT) in a patient in need thereof. In some embodiments, the methods comprise orally administering ferric citrate to an a CKD patient, e.g., an end stage renal disease patient, at a dose of ferric iron ranging from 210 mg – 2,520 mg, wherein the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT of 5 – 10 % when administered for a period of at least 52 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in transferrin saturation (TSAT) in the 25 patient of 6 – 9 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in transferrin saturation (TSAT) in the patient of 8%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered in a 1 gram tablet dosage form, each dosage form comprising 210 mg of ferric iron. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to 18 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to and including 12 tablet dosage forms per day. In some 30 some embodiments, the patient is administered 6 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is administered 6 to 12 tablet dosage forms per day. In some

embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered within 1 hour of the ingestion of a meal or snack by the patient. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate has a BET active surface area greater than about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 20 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 5 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area is selected from 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g, 28.87 m<sup>2</sup>/g and 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 30 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 40 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate has an intrinsic dissolution rate of 1.88 – 4.0 mg/cm<sup>2</sup>/min.

In yet another embodiment, the at least one iron storage parameter is hemoglobin concentration, and the present disclosure provides methods of increasing hemoglobin concentration in a patient in need thereof. In some embodiments, the methods comprise orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, e.g., an end-stage renal disease patient, at a dose of ferric iron ranging from 210 mg – 2,520 mg, wherein the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration in the patient of 0.3 – 0.6 g/dl when administered for a period of at 10 least 52 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration in the patient of 0.3 – 0.5 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration of 0.4 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered in a 1 gram tablet dosage form, each dosage form comprising 210 mg of ferric iron. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to 18 tablet dosage forms per day. In 15 some embodiments, the patient is administered up to and including 12 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is administered 6 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is administered 6 to 12 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered within 1 hour of the ingestion of a meal or snack by the patient. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate has a BET active surface area greater 20 than about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 20 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area is selected from 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g, 28.87 m<sup>2</sup>/g and 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 30 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 40 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate has an 25 intrinsic dissolution rate of 1.88 – 4.0 mg/cm<sup>2</sup>/min.

In yet another aspect, the present disclosure provides methods of increasing iron absorption in a patient in need thereof. In some embodiments, the methods comprise orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, e.g., a non-dialysis chronic kidney disease patient or an end stage renal disease patient, in an amount ranging from about 1 g to about 18 g per day.

5 In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered in a 1 gram tablet dosage form. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to 18 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to and including 12 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate has a BET active surface area greater than about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 20 m<sup>2</sup>/g.

10 In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area is selected from 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g, 28.87 m<sup>2</sup>/g and 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 30 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 40 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate has an intrinsic dissolution rate of 1.88 – 4.0 mg/cm<sup>2</sup>/min.

15 In yet another aspect, the present disclosure provides methods of treating iron deficiency in a patient in need thereof. In some embodiments, the methods comprise orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, e.g., a non-dialysis chronic kidney disease patient or an end stage renal disease patient, in an amount ranging from about 1 g to about 18 g per day. In some embodiments, the iron deficiency is anemia. In some embodiments, the treatment provides a hemoglobin level in the patient that is at or above a level selected from 12.0 g/dl and 7.4 mmol/L. In other embodiments, the treatment provides a hemoglobin level in the patient that is at or above a level selected from 13.0 g/dl and 8.1 mmol/L. In yet other embodiments, the treatment provides a hemoglobin level in the patient that is at or above a level selected from 6.8 mmol/L, 7.1 mmol/L, 7.4 mmol/L, and 8.1 mmol/L. In yet other embodiments, the treatment provides a hemoglobin level in the patient that is at or above a level selected from 11.0 g/dl, 11.5 g/dl, 12.0 g/dl, and 13.0 g/dl. In some embodiments, the treatment reduces at least one symptom of iron deficiency selected from fatigue, dizziness, pallor, hair loss, irritability, weakness, pica, brittle or grooved nails, Plummer-Vinson syndrome, impaired immune function, pagophagia, restless legs syndrome and combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered in a 1 gram tablet dosage form. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to 18 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to

and including 12 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate has a BET active surface area greater than about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 20 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area is selected from 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g, 28.87 m<sup>2</sup>/g and 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 30 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 40 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate has an intrinsic dissolution rate of 1.88 – 4.0 mg/cm<sup>2</sup>/min.

5 In yet another aspect, the present disclosure provides methods of reducing intravenous (IV) iron use in a CKD patient, e.g., an end-stage renal disease patient. In some embodiments, 10 the methods comprise orally administering ferric citrate to the patient at a dose of ferric iron ranging from 210 mg – 2,520 mg, wherein the ferric citrate reduces the need for the end-stage renal disease patient to be administered IV iron by an amount selected from 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59 and 60 % when administered for a period of at least 52 weeks. In some 15 embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake selected from 51.0, 51.1, 51.2, 51.3, 51.4, 51.5, 51.6, 51.7, 51.9 and 52.0 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake of 51.6 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered in a 1 gram tablet dosage form, each dosage form comprising 210 mg of ferric iron. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to 18 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is 20 administered up to and including 12 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is administered 6 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is administered 6 to 12 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered within 1 hour of the ingestion of a meal or snack by the patient. In some 25 embodiments, the patient was treated with thrice-weekly hemodialysis or with peritoneal dialysis for at least 3 months prior to administration of the ferric citrate. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate has a BET active surface area greater than about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 20 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area is selected from 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g, 28.87 m<sup>2</sup>/g and 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some 30 embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 30 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 40 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate has an intrinsic dissolution rate of 1.88 – 4.0 mg/cm<sup>2</sup>/min.

In yet another aspect, the present disclosure provides methods of reducing use of erythropoiesis-stimulating agents (ESAs) in a CKD patient, e.g., an end-stage renal disease patient. In some embodiments, the methods comprise orally administering ferric citrate to the patient at a dose of ferric iron ranging from 210 mg – 2,520 mg, wherein the ferric citrate reduces 5 the need for the patient to be administered one or more ESAs by an amount selected from 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29 and 30 % when administered for a period of at least 52 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a decrease in median ESA intake selected from 10 27.0, 27.1, 27.2, 27.3, 27.4, 27.5, 27.6, 27.7, 27.9 and 28.0 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake of 27.1 %. In some 15 embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered in a 1 gram tablet dosage form, each dosage form comprising 210 mg of ferric iron. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to 18 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to and including 12 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is administered 6 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is administered 6 to 12 tablet 20 dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered within 1 hour of the ingestion of a meal or snack by the patient. In some embodiments, the patient was treated with thrice-weekly hemodialysis or with peritoneal dialysis for at least 3 months prior to administration of the ferric citrate. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate has a BET active surface area greater than about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 20 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area is selected from 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g, 28.87 m<sup>2</sup>/g and 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 30 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 40 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate has an intrinsic dissolution rate of 1.88 – 4.0 mg/cm<sup>2</sup>/min.

25 In yet another aspect, the disclosure provides methods for the treatment of, or reduction of the incidence or risk of, adverse cardiac events in subjects with chronic kidney disease. In other embodiments, the disclosure provides methods of reducing mortality and morbidly related to adverse cardiac events in subjects with chronic kidney disease. In other embodiments, the disclosure provides methods for the reduction of the incidence or risk of hospitalizations related 30 to adverse cardiac events in subjects with chronic kidney disease. In some embodiments, the methods comprise orally administering ferric citrate to a subject with CKD, e.g., a non-dialysis

chronic kidney disease patient or an end stage renal disease patient, in an amount ranging from about 1 g to about 18 g per day. In some embodiments, the method comprises raising the hemoglobin level of the subject, e.g., to a level above 10 g/dL, above 11 g/dL, above 12 g/dL, or above 13 g/dL. In other embodiments, the method comprises reducing FGF-23 levels of the 5 subject, e.g., by at least 30%, at least 32%, at least 35%, at least 37%.

Adverse cardiac events can include heart failure, ventricular arrhythmias, myocardial infarction (MI), decreased left ventricular (LV) ejection fraction, sudden cardiac death, aortic root dilation, cerebrovascular events (stroke), left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH), as measured, e.g., by echocardiography or ECG criteria such as the Sokolow-Lyon Amplitude, Cornell 10 Amplitude, Sokolow-Lyon Product or Cornell Product.

Again, in some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered in a 1 gram tablet dosage form, each dosage form comprising 210 mg of ferric iron. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to 18 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to and including 12 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the 15 patient is administered 6 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is administered 6 to 12 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered within 1 hour of the ingestion of a meal or snack by the patient. In some embodiments, the patient was treated with thrice-weekly hemodialysis or with peritoneal dialysis for at least 3 months prior to administration of the ferric citrate. In some embodiments, the ferric 20 citrate has a BET active surface area greater than about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 20 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area is selected from 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g, 28.87 m<sup>2</sup>/g and 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some 25 embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 30 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 40 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate has an intrinsic dissolution rate of 1.88 – 4.0 mg/cm<sup>2</sup>/min.

## DETAILED DESCRIPTION

In some aspects, the present disclosure provides methods of using a ferric citrate to reduce and/or control serum phosphorus levels, increase serum bicarbonate levels, improve one 30 or more iron storage parameters (e.g., increase serum ferritin levels, increase transferrin saturation (TSAT), increase hemoglobin concentration), increase iron absorption, maintain iron

stores, treat iron deficiency, treat anemia, reduce the need for IV iron and/or reduce the need for erythropoiesis-stimulating agents (ESAs) in chronic kidney disease (CKD) patients. In other aspects, the present disclosure provides methods of using ferric citrate for treating, or reducing the incidence or risk of, adverse cardiac events, for reducing mortality and morbidly related to 5 adverse cardiac events, and for reducing the incidence or risk of hospitalizations related to adverse cardiac events in subjects with chronic kidney disease.

In each instance, the methods comprise administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, including a non-dialysis CKD (ND-CKD) patient as well as an end stage renal disease (ESRD) patient. In some aspects, the administration of ferric citrate occurs over a long period of time 10 including, for example, up to and including 52 weeks. In some embodiments, the administration of ferric citrate occurs over a period up to and including 56 weeks.

In each of these disclosed methods, ferric citrate may be administered to the CKD patient over a period of time that is at least 52 weeks and, in some embodiments, up to and including 56 weeks or longer. Additionally, in each of these methods the ferric citrate may be administered to 15 the CKD patient orally, in a 1 g tablet, or caplet, dosage form that contains 210 mg of ferric iron. In certain embodiments, up to 18 tablets, or caplets, may be administered over the course of a day. In other embodiments, up to and including 12 tablets, or caplets, may be administered over the course of a day.

The present disclosure also provides pharmaceutical compositions, which may also be an 20 iron supplement, which may be administered to CKD patients. The compositions/iron supplements comprise ferric citrate as well as other pharmaceutically acceptable ingredients, as described below. The compositions/iron supplements are formulated to provide iron to CKD patients, and the amount of iron provided by the compositions/iron supplements is sufficient to increase iron absorption, improve one or more iron storage parameters, treat iron deficiency 25 and/or treat anemia in CKD patients. The compositions/iron supplements may be provided in any number of forms, as described below. In particular, the compositions/iron supplements may be provided as oral tablet dosage forms.

Reference is now made in detail to certain embodiments of ferric citrate, dosage forms, compositions, methods of synthesis and methods of use. The disclosed embodiments are not 30 intended to be limiting of the claims. To the contrary, the claims are intended to cover all alternatives, modifications, and equivalents.

### Therapeutic Uses of Ferric Citrate

As set forth in greater detail below, disclosed herein are methods and dosage forms that can be used to reduce and/or control serum phosphorus levels, increase serum bicarbonate levels, improve one or more iron storage parameters (e.g., increase serum ferritin levels, increase transferrin saturation (TSAT), increase hemoglobin concentration) increase iron absorption, maintain iron stores, treat iron deficiency, treat anemia, reduce the need for IV iron and/or reduce the need for erythropoiesis-stimulating agents (ESAs) in CKD patients, including non-dialysis CKD (ND-CKD) patients and end state renal disease (ESRD) patients.

Therefore, in various aspects, the ferric citrate disclosed herein may be administered to CKD patients to reduce and/or control serum phosphorus. In various aspects, the ferric citrate disclosed herein may be administered to CKD patients to increase serum bicarbonate. In various aspects, the ferric citrate disclosed herein may be administered to CKD patients to improve one or more iron storage parameters, including to increase serum ferritin, to increase transferrin saturation (TSAT), and to increase hemoglobin concentration. In various aspects, the ferric citrate disclosed herein may be administered to CKD patients to increase iron absorption. In various aspects, the ferric citrate disclosed herein may be administered to CKD patients to maintain iron stores. In various aspects, the ferric citrate disclosed herein may be administered to CKD patients to treat iron deficiency. In various aspects, the ferric citrate disclosed herein may be administered to CKD patients to treat anemia. In various aspects, the ferric citrate disclosed herein may be administered to CKD patients to reduce the need for IV iron and/or erythropoiesis-stimulating agents (ESAs).

Methods of treating CKD patients are also disclosed. In various aspects, the present disclosure provides methods of reducing and/or controlling serum phosphorus, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides a reduction in serum phosphorus. In various aspects, the present disclosure provides methods of increasing serum bicarbonate, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides an increase in serum bicarbonate. In various aspects, the present disclosure provides methods of improving one or more iron storage parameters, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides improvement in one or more iron storage parameters. In various

aspects, the present disclosure provides methods of increasing serum ferritin, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides an increase in serum ferritin. In various aspects, the present disclosure provides methods of increasing transferrin saturation (TSAT), the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides an increase in TSAT. In various aspects, the present disclosure provides methods of increasing hemoglobin concentration, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides an increase in hemoglobin concentration. In various aspects, the present disclosure provides methods of increasing iron absorption, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides an increase in iron absorption.

5 In various aspects, the present disclosure provides methods of maintaining iron stores, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides for maintenance of iron stores. In various aspects, the present disclosure provides methods of treating iron deficiency, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides treatment of iron deficiency. In various aspects, the present disclosure provides methods of treating anemia, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides for treatment of anemia. In various aspects, the present disclosure provides methods of reducing intravenous (IV) iron use in a CKD patient, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate reduces the need for the CKD to be administered IV iron. In various aspects, the present disclosure provides methods of reducing use of erythropoiesis-stimulating agents (ESAs) in CKD patient, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to the CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate reduces the need for the CKD patient to be administered one or more ESAs when administered. In each of the methods,

10 15 20 25

the ferric citrate may be administered for a period of time up to and including 52 weeks, including up to and including 56 weeks.

### ***Chronic Kidney Disease Patients***

In various aspects, the ferric citrate disclosed herein is administered to any chronic kidney disease (CKD) patients to treat any of the conditions and disorders associated with CKD, such as described herein. All individuals with a glomerular filtration rate (GFR) <60

ml/min/1.73 m<sup>2</sup> for 3 months are classified as having CKD, irrespective of the presence or absence of kidney damage. Those individuals with CKD who require either dialysis or kidney transplantation are typically referred to as end-stage renal disease (ESRD) patients. Therefore, a patient is traditionally classified as an ESRD patient when he or she reaches the conclusion of the 5 non-dialysis dependent, earlier stages, of CKD. Prior to then, those patients are referred to as non-dialysis dependent CKD patients. However, patients with an advanced stage of CKD, such as stage 5, who have not yet started dialysis or who have not been recommended for transplantation are also typically referred to as non-dialysis dependent CKD patients.

Non-dialysis CKD (ND-CKD) patients are those who have been diagnosed with an early 10 stage of chronic kidney disease and who have not yet been medically directed to undergo dialysis. As noted above, the U.S. National Kidney Foundation has defined 5 stages of chronic kidney disease. Typically, patients progress through stages 1 through 4 before dialysis is medically necessary.

As used herein, ND-CKD is intended to cover all patients who have been diagnosed with 15 chronic kidney disease but who are not undergoing dialysis during the administration of ferric citrate. Such patients can include, for example, patients who have never been subjected to dialysis and, in some embodiments, patients who have been subjected to dialysis but who are not undergoing dialysis during the administration of ferric citrate.

In various aspects, ESRD patients are typically those who have been diagnosed with a 20 late stage of chronic kidney disease. In some instances the phrase “end-stage renal disease” is used to indicate the fifth stage of CKD. Therefore, as used herein, an ESRD patient is a patient who has an advanced stage of CKD, such as stage 5, and who has begun either hemodialysis or peritoneal dialysis and/or who has been recommended for kidney transplantation by a health care provider.

25 In some embodiments, CKD patients display one or more of the following characteristics: a serum phosphorus level between 2.5 mg/dL and 8.0 mg/dL; a serum phosphorus level greater than or equal to 6.0 mg/dL when removed from a phosphate binder; are taking 3 to 18 pills/day of calcium acetate, calcium carbonate, lanthanum carbonate, sevelamer (carbonate or hydrochloride or equivalent sevelamer powder), any other agent serving as a phosphate binder, 30 or a combination of any of the foregoing; have a serum ferritin level that is less than 1000 mg/L;

have a transferrin saturation level (TSAT) that is less than 50% at screening; have a life expectancy of more than 1 year; or a combination of any of the foregoing.

In addition, CKD patients may be taking phosphorus binding agents other than ferric citrate, though this is not required. The CKD patients can be mammals and, in some 5 embodiments, are humans. In some embodiments, CKD patients are female or male of any age and/or weight. In some embodiments, CKD patients are males or non-pregnant, non-breastfeeding females who are at least 18 years of age and have been on thrice-weekly hemodialysis and/or peritoneal dialysis for at least 3 months.

10 ***Serum Phosphorus***

Phosphate is critical for a vast array of cellular processes. It is one of the major components of the skeleton and an integral component of the nucleic acids that make up DNA and RNA. In addition, the phosphate bonds of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) carry the energy required for all cellular functions. Phosphate functions as a buffer in bone, serum, and urine and 15 the addition and/or deletion of phosphate groups to/from enzymes and proteins are common mechanisms for the regulation of their activity. Given the breadth of influence phosphate has, its homeostasis is understandably a highly regulated process.

Patients with CKD typically demonstrate elevated levels of serum phosphate. In non-CKD patients, normal serum phosphate levels should be between 0.81 mmol/L and 1.45 mmol/L. 20 In a CKD patient, however, serum phosphate levels are typically markedly increased as kidney function is lost and the body loses its ability to excrete phosphate through the urine. This means that CKD patients typically experience hyperphosphatemia, which is an electrolyte disturbance in which there is an abnormally elevated level of phosphate in the blood. Hyperphosphatemia develops in the majority of CKD patients and is typically associated with progression of 25 secondary hyperparathyroidism and renal osteodystrophy. In addition, hyperphosphatemia has recently been associated with increased cardiovascular mortality among dialysis patients. Adequate control of serum phosphorus is crucial in the clinical management of CKD patients to attenuate the progression of secondary hyperparathyroidism and to reduce the risk of vascular calcification and cardiovascular mortality. Typical measures taken to control serum phosphate 30 levels in CKD patients include dietary phosphorus restriction, dialysis, and oral phosphate binders. Unfortunately, dietary restriction has limited effect in advanced stages of CKD, such as

ESRD. Therefore, oral phosphate binders are necessary to limit dietary absorption of phosphorus in CKD patients.

CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein may experience an improvement in serum phosphate levels. In some embodiments, CKD patients treated according 5 to the methods disclosed herein experience a decrease in serum phosphate levels. In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides methods of reducing serum phosphorus in a CKD patient, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to CKD patient, e.g., an end-stage renal disease patient or non-dialysis chronic kidney disease patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides a reduction in serum phosphorus in the patient. In some embodiments, the present 10 disclosure provides methods for treatment of hyperphosphatemia in a CKD patient, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to CKD patient, e.g., an end-stage renal disease patient or non-dialysis chronic kidney disease patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides a reduction in serum phosphorus in the patient. In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides methods of reducing serum phosphorus, the methods comprising orally administering 15 ferric citrate to an end-stage renal disease patient at a dose of ferric iron ranging from 210 mg – 2,520 mg, wherein the ferric citrate provides a reduction in serum phosphorus in the patient. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered for a period of 12 weeks. In some 20 embodiments for a period of 24 weeks, in some embodiments for a period of 36 weeks, in some embodiments for a period of 48 weeks, in some embodiments for a period of 52 weeks, and in some embodiments for a period of up to and including 56 weeks. In some embodiments for a period of 53 weeks. In some embodiments for a period of 54 weeks, in some embodiments for a period of 55 weeks. In some embodiments for a period of 56 weeks.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus from 1.00 – 3.00 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in 25 serum phosphorus from 1.10 – 2.90 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus from 1.20 – 2.80 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus from 1.30 – 2.70 mg/dl. In some 30 embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus from 1.40 – 2.60 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus from 1.50 – 2.50 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus from 1.60 – 2.40 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a

mean reduction in serum phosphorus from 1.70 – 2.30 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus from 1.80 – 2.20 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus from 1.90 – 2.10 mg/dl. The above ranges are disclosed in this format for purposes of efficiency, and any of the 5 above ranges can be combined with any method, formulation, or combination thereof.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of from 1.00 – 1.25 mg/dl, 1.00 – 1.50 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of from 1.00 – 1.75 mg/dl . In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of from 1.00 – 2.00 mg/dl. In some 10 embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus selected from 2.00 – 2.25 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus selected from 2.00 – 2.50 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus selected from 2.00 – 2.75 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus selected from 2.00 – 3.00 15 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus selected from 1.00 – 2.25 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus selected from 1.00 – 2.50 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus selected from 1.00 – 2.75 mg/dl. In some 20 embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus selected from 1.00 – 3.00 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of 2.00 – 2.50 mg/dl. The above ranges are disclosed in this format for purposes of efficiency, and any of the above ranges can be combined with any method, formulation, or combination thereof.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus 25 that is greater than 1.00. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is greater than 1.10. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is selected from greater than greater than 1.20 . In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is greater than 1.30. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum 30 phosphorus that is greater than 1.40. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is greater than 1.50. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate

provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is greater than 1.60. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is greater than 1.70. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is greater than 1.80. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is greater than 1.90. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is greater than 2.00. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is greater than 2.10. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is greater than 2.20. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is greater than 2.30. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is greater than 2.40. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is greater than 2.50. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is greater than 2.60. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is greater than 2.70. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is greater than 2.80. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is greater than 2.90 mg/dl. The above boundaries are disclosed in this format for purposes of efficiency, and any of the above boundaries can be combined with any method, formulation, lower boundary as disclosed below, or combination thereof.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is less than 3.00 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is less than 2.90 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is less than 2.80 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is less than 2.70 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is less than 2.60 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is less than 2.50 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is less than 2.40 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is less than 2.30 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is less than 2.20 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean

reduction in serum phosphorus that is less than 2.10 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is less than 2.00 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is less than 1.90 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is less than 1.80 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is less than 1.70 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is less than 1.60 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is less than 1.50 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is less than 1.40 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is less than 1.30 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is less than 1.20 mg/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is less than 1.10 mg/dl. The above boundaries are disclosed in this format for purposes of efficiency, and any of the above boundaries can be combined with any method, formulation, upper boundary disclosed above, or combination thereof.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of one of about 1.90, 1.91, 1.92, 1.93, 1.94, 1.95, 1.96, 1.97, 1.98, 1.99, 2.00, 2.01, 2.02, 2.03, 2.04, 2.05, 2.06, 2.07, 2.08, 2.09 and 2.10 mg/dl when administered for a period of 12 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of about 2.00 mg/dl when administered for a period of 12 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of one of about 2.10, 2.11, 2.12, 2.13, 2.14, 2.15, 2.16, 2.17, 2.18, 2.19, 2.20, 2.21, 2.22, 2.23, 2.24 and 2.25 mg/dl when administered for a period of 24 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of about 2.20 mg/dl when administered for a period of 24 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of one of about 2.10, 2.11, 2.12, 2.13, 2.14, 2.15, 2.16, 2.17, 2.18, 2.19 and 2.20 mg/dl when administered for a period of 36 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of about 2.20 mg/dl when administered for a period of 36 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of one 1.95 mg/dl, 1.96, 1.97, 1.98, 1.99, 2.00, 2.01, 2.02, 2.03, 2.04, 2.05, 2.06, 2.07, 2.08, 2.09, 2.10, 2.11,

2.12, 2.13, 2.14 and 2.15 mg/dl when administered for a period of 48 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of about 2.10 mg/dl when administered for a period of 48 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of one of about 1.95 mg/dl. , 1.96, 1.97, 1.98, 5 1.99, 2.00, 2.01, 2.02, 2.03, 2.04, 2.05, 2.06, 2.07, 2.08, 2.09, 2.10, 2.11, 2.12, 2.13, 2.14, 2.15, 2.16, 2.17, 2.18, 2.19, 2.20, 2.21, 2.22, 2.23, 2.24, 2.25, 2.26, 2.27, 2.28, 2.29 and 2.30 mg/dl when administered for a period of 52 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of about 2.10 mg/dl when administered for a period of 52 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus 10 of one of about .20, 0.21, 0.22, 0.23, 0.24, 0.25, 0.26, 0.27, 0.28, 0.29, 0.30, 0.31, 0.32, 0.33, 0.34 and 0.35 mg/dl when administered for a period of 56 weeks, as measured from a baseline of 52 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of 0.30 mg/dl when administered for a period of 56 weeks, as measured from a baseline of 52 weeks.

15 In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus selected from 20 – 35 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus selected from 20 – 35 %, 22 – 33 % and 25 – 30 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of 27 – 28.5 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of 27 – 28.4 %.  
20 In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is selected from greater than 20, greater than 21, greater than 22, greater than 23, greater than 24, greater than 25, greater than 26, greater than 27, greater than 28, greater than 29, greater than 30, greater than 31, greater than 32, greater than 33 and greater than 34 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus that is selected from less than 25 35, less than 34, less than 33, less than 32, less than 33, less than 32, less than 31, less than 30, less than 29, less than 28, less than 27, less than 26, less than 25, less than 24, less than 23, less than 22 and less than 21 %.

30 In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus selected from 1.90, 1.91, 1.92, 1.93, 1.94, 1.95, 1.96, 1.97, 1.98, 1.99, 2.00, 2.01, 2.02, 2.03, 2.04, 2.05, 2.06, 2.07, 2.08, 2.09 and 2.10 mg/dl when administered for a period of 12 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of 2.00

mg/dl when administered for a period of 12 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus selected from 2.10, 2.11, 2.12, 2.13, 2.14, 2.15, 2.16, 2.17, 2.18, 2.19, 2.20, 2.21, 2.22, 2.23, 2.24 and 2.25 mg/dl when administered for a period of 24 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of 2.20 mg/dl when administered for a period of 24 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus selected from 2.10, 2.11, 2.12, 2.13, 2.14, 2.15, 2.16, 2.17, 2.18, 2.19 and 2.20 mg/dl when administered for a period of 36 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of 2.20 mg/dl when administered for a period of 36 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus selected from 1.95, 1.96, 1.97, 1.98, 1.99, 2.00, 2.01, 2.02, 2.03, 2.04, 2.05, 2.06, 2.07, 2.08, 2.09, 2.10, 2.11, 2.12, 2.13, 2.14 and 2.15 mg/dl when administered for a period of 48 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of 2.10 mg/dl when administered for a period of 48 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus selected from 1.95, 1.96, 1.97, 1.98, 1.99, 2.00, 2.01, 2.02, 2.03, 2.04, 2.05, 2.06, 2.07, 2.08, 2.09, 2.10, 2.11, 2.12, 2.13, 2.14, 2.15, 2.16, 2.17, 2.18, 2.19, 2.20, 2.21, 2.22, 2.23, 2.24, 2.25, 2.26, 2.27, 2.28, 2.29 and 2.30 mg/dl when administered for a period of 52 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of 2.10 mg/dl when administered for a period of 52 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus selected from 0.20, 0.21, 0.22, 0.23, 0.24, 0.25, 0.26, 0.27, 0.28, 0.29, 0.30, 0.31, 0.32, 0.33, 0.34 and 0.35 mg/dl when administered for a period of 56 weeks, as measured from a baseline of 52 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus of 0.30 mg/dl when administered for a period of 56 weeks, as measured from a baseline of 52 weeks.

25 In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus as set forth in Table A:

**Table A:**

Mean Serum Phosphorus (mg/dL)	Placebo (n=91)	Ferric Citrate (n=92)
Baseline (Week 52)	5.3	5.2
End of Treatment <sup>1</sup> (Week 56)	7.2	4.9
Change from Baseline at Week 56	1.9	-0.3
Least Squares (LS) Mean Difference from Placebo <sup>2</sup> p-value <sup>2</sup>		-2.3 p<0.0001

<sup>1</sup> Last observation carried forward was used for missing data.

<sup>2</sup> The LS Mean treatment difference and p-value is created via an ANCOVA model with treatment as the fixed effect and baseline as the covariate.

5 In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in serum phosphorus as set forth in Table B:

**Table B:**

N=277	Baseline	Week				
		12	24	36	48	52
<b>Ferric Citrate Mean Serum Phosphorus (mg/dL)<sup>1</sup></b>	7.4	5.4	5.2	5.2	5.3	5.3
Change from Baseline		-2.0	-2.2	-2.2	-2.1	-2.1
% Change from Baseline		-27%	-30%	-30%	-28%	-28%
p-value		<0.0001	<0.0001	<0.0001	<0.0001	<0.0001

<sup>1</sup> Last observation carried forward was used for missing data.

10 In some embodiments, CKD patients, such as ESRD patients, treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience maintenance of their serum phosphorus levels such that their serum phosphorus levels remain substantially unchanged during administration of the ferric citrate.

### 15 *Serum Bicarbonate*

Metabolic acidosis is a condition that occurs in CKD patients when the body produces too much acid and/or when the kidneys are not removing enough acid from the body. If unchecked, metabolic acidosis leads to acidemia, where the blood pH drops to less than 7.35, due to increased production of hydrogen by the body and/or the inability of the body to form bicarbonate (HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>) in the kidney. The consequences of metabolic acidosis in CKD patients can be serious, including coma and death. It is therefore important that CKD patients maintain a

normal level of bicarbonate in their bloodstream. For non-CKD patients, a typical measure of serum bicarbonate ranges from 22 mEq/L – 28 mEq/L, or from 22 mmol/L to 28 mmol/L, respectively. In a CKD patient, however, the serum bicarbonate concentration can be greatly reduced as the kidneys lose their ability to produce bicarbonate.

5 CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein may experience an increase in serum bicarbonate concentration. In some embodiments, CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience an increase in serum bicarbonate concentration. In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides methods of increasing serum bicarbonate concentration in a CKD patient, such as an ESRD patient or ND-CKD patient, 10 the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides an increase in serum bicarbonate concentration in the patient. In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides methods of increasing serum bicarbonate concentration, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient at a dose of ferric iron ranging from 210 mg – 2,520 mg, wherein the ferric citrate provides an increase 15 in serum bicarbonate concentration in the patient. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to 18 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered for a period of 12 weeks, in some embodiments for a period of 36 weeks, in some embodiments for a period of 52 weeks, and in some embodiments for a period of up to and including 56 weeks.

20 In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum bicarbonate concentration in the patient of 0.1 – 1.0 mEq/L. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum bicarbonate concentration in the patient selected from 0.70, 0.71, 0.72, 0.73, 0.74, 0.75, 0.76, 0.77, 0.78, 0.79 and 0.80 mEq/L. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum bicarbonate concentration in the patient of 0.71 mEq/L.

25 In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum bicarbonate concentration greater than 0.70 mEq/L. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum bicarbonate concentration greater than 0.71 mEq/L. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum bicarbonate concentration greater than 0.72 mEq/L. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum bicarbonate concentration greater than 0.73 mEq/L. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum bicarbonate concentration greater than 0.74 mEq/L. In some embodiments, the 30

ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum bicarbonate concentration greater than 0.75 mEq/L. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum bicarbonate concentration greater than 0.76 mEq/L. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum bicarbonate concentration greater than 0.77 mEq/L. In some embodiments, the  
5 ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum bicarbonate concentration greater than 0.78 mEq/L. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum bicarbonate concentration greater than 0.79 mEq/L. The above boundaries are disclosed in this format for purposes of efficiency, and any of the above boundaries can be combined with any method, formulation, lower boundary as disclosed below, or combination thereof.

10 In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum bicarbonate concentration less than 0.80 mEq/L. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum bicarbonate concentration less than 0.79 mEq/L. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum bicarbonate concentration less than 0.78 mEq/L. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum bicarbonate  
15 concentration less than 0.77 mEq/L. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum bicarbonate concentration less than 0.76 mEq/L. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum bicarbonate concentration less than 0.75 mEq/L. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum bicarbonate concentration less than 0.74 mEq/L. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean  
20 increase in serum bicarbonate concentration less than 0.73 mEq/L. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum bicarbonate concentration less than 0.72 mEq/L. The above boundaries are disclosed in this format for purposes of efficiency, and any of the above boundaries can be combined with any method, formulation, upper boundary disclosed above, or combination thereof.

25 In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum bicarbonate concentration of 0.71 mEq/L when administered for a period of 52 weeks.

In some embodiments, CKD patients, such as ESRD patients, treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience maintenance of their serum bicarbonate concentration such that their serum bicarbonate level remains substantially unchanged during administration of the  
30 ferric citrate.

***Iron Storage Parameters***

Patients with CKD may demonstrate low or inadequate markers of systemic iron status. This means that CKD patients may not have sufficient iron stored within their bodies to maintain proper iron levels. Most well-nourished, non-CKD people living in industrialized countries have 5 approximately 4 to 5 grams of iron stored within their bodies. About 2.5 g of this iron is contained in hemoglobin, which carries oxygen through the blood. Most of the remaining approximately 1.5 to 2.5 grams of iron is contained in iron binding complexes that are present in all cells, but that are more highly concentrated in bone marrow and organs such as the liver and spleen. The liver's stores of iron are the primary physiologic reserve of iron in the non-CKD 10 body. Of the body's total iron content, about 400 mg is utilized in proteins that use iron for cellular processes such as oxygen storage (myoglobin) or performing energy-producing redox reactions (cytochrome proteins). In addition to stored iron, a small amount of iron, typically about 3 to 4 mg, circulates through the blood plasma bound to a protein called transferrin. Because of its toxicity, free soluble ferrous iron (iron(II) or  $Fe^{2+}$ ) is typically kept at a low 15 concentration in the body.

Iron deficiency first depletes the stored iron in the body. Because most of the iron utilized by the body is required for hemoglobin, iron-deficiency anemia is the primary clinical manifestation of iron deficiency. Oxygen transport to the tissues is so important to human life that severe anemia harms or kills people with CKD, inclusive of ND-CKD patients and ESRD 20 patients, by depriving their organs of oxygen. Iron-deficient CKD patients will suffer, and in some instances may die, from organ damage caused by oxygen depletion well before cells run out of the iron needed for intracellular processes.

There are several markers of systemic iron status that may be measured to determine whether a CKD patient has sufficient iron stores to maintain adequate health. These markers 25 may be of circulating iron stores, iron stored in iron-binding complexes, or both, and are also typically referred to as iron storage parameters. Iron storage parameters can include, for example, hematocrit, hemoglobin concentration (Hb), total iron-binding capacity (TIBC), transferrin saturation (TSAT), serum iron levels, liver iron levels, spleen iron levels, and serum ferritin levels. Of these, the hematocrit, hemoglobin concentration (Hb), total iron-binding 30 capacity (TIBC), transferrin saturation (TSAT) and serum iron levels are commonly known as

circulating iron stores. The liver iron levels, spleen iron levels, and serum ferritin levels are commonly referred to as stored iron or iron stored in iron-binding complexes.

In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides methods of improving one or more iron storage parameters in a patient in need thereof. In some embodiments, the methods 5 comprise orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, e.g., a non-dialysis chronic kidney disease patient or an end stage renal disease patient, in an amount ranging from about 1 g to about 18 g per day. In some embodiments, the at least one iron storage parameter may be selected from serum ferritin levels, transferrin saturation (TSAT), hemoglobin concentration, hematocrit, total iron-binding capacity, iron absorption levels, serum iron levels, liver iron levels, 10 spleen iron levels, and combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered in a 1 gram tablet dosage form. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to 18 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered for a period of 12 weeks, in some embodiments for a period of 36 weeks, in some embodiments for a period of 52 weeks, and in some embodiments for a period of up to and including 56 weeks.

15 In another embodiment, the at least one iron storage parameter is hematocrit, and improving comprises increasing the hematocrit of the patient. In other embodiments, the at least one iron storage parameter is hemoglobin concentration, and improving comprises increasing the hemoglobin concentration of the patient. In yet other embodiments, the at least one iron storage parameter is total iron-binding capacity, and improving comprises decreasing the total iron- 20 binding capacity of the patient. In yet other embodiments, the at least one iron storage parameter is transferrin saturation, and improving comprises increasing the transferrin saturation of the patient. In yet other embodiments, the at least one iron storage parameter is serum iron levels, and improving comprises increasing the serum iron levels of the patient. In yet other embodiments, the at least one iron storage parameter is liver iron levels, and improving 25 comprises increasing the liver iron levels of the patient. In yet other embodiments, the at least one iron storage parameter is spleen iron levels, and improving comprises increasing the spleen iron levels of the patient. In yet other embodiments, the at least one iron storage parameter is serum ferritin levels, and improving comprises increasing the serum ferritin levels of the patient.

### ***Serum Ferritin***

30 The liver's stores of ferritin are the primary source of stored iron in the body. Ferritin is an intracellular protein that stores iron and releases it in a controlled fashion. Medically, the

amount of ferritin present in a blood sample and/or in a sample of liver tissue reflects the amount of iron that is stored in the liver (although ferritin is ubiquitous and can be found in many other tissues within the body in addition to the liver). Ferritin serves to store iron in the liver in a non-toxic form and to transport it to areas where it is required. In non-CKD patients, a normal 5 ferritin blood serum level, sometimes referred to as the reference interval, is usually between 30–300 ng/ml for males, and 15–200 ng/ml for females. In a CKD patient, however, serum ferritin levels are typically markedly reduced as the amount of iron available to be bound by ferritin and stored in the liver is decreased, which occurs as the body loses its ability to absorb and store iron.

In some embodiments, CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein 10 experience an increase in serum ferritin levels. In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides methods of increasing serum ferritin in a patient in need thereof, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to an CKD patient, e.g., an ESRD patient or ND-CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides an increase in serum ferritin. In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides methods of increasing serum ferritin, the methods 15 comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient at a dose of ferric iron ranging from 210 mg – 2,520 mg, wherein the ferric citrate provides an increase in serum ferritin in the patient. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered for a period of 12 weeks, in some embodiments for a period of 24 weeks, in some embodiments for a period of 36 weeks, in some embodiments for a period of 48 weeks, and in some embodiments for a period of 52 weeks.

20 In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of 100 – 400 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of 110 – 390 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of 120 – 380 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of 130 – 370 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean 25 increase in serum ferritin of about 140 – 360 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of 150 – 350 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of 160 – 340 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of 170 – 330 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of 180 – 320 ng/ml. In some 30 some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of 190 – 310 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of 200

– 300 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of 210 – 290 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of 220 – 280 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of 230 – 270 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of 240 – 260 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of from 100 – 400 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of 100 – 375 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of from 100 – 350 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of from 100 – 325 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of from 100 – 300 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of from 100 – 275 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of from 150 – 310 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of from 151 – 309 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of from 152 – 308 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of from 153 – 307 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of from 154 – 306 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of from 155 – 306 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of from 155 – 305 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of from 155 – 304 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of from 155 – 303 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of from 155 – 302 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of from 150 – 305 ng/ml. The above ranges are disclosed in this format for purposes of efficiency, and any of the above ranges can be combined with any method, formulation, or combination thereof.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of 302 ng/ml when administered over a period of 52 weeks.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is greater than 100 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in



mean increase in serum ferritin that is greater than 370 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is greater than 380 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is greater than 390 ng/ml. The above boundaries are disclosed in this format for purposes of efficiency, and any of 5 the above boundaries can be combined with any method, formulation, lower boundary as disclosed below, or combination thereof.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is selected from less than 400 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 390 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate 10 provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 380 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 370 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 360 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 350 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum 15 ferritin that is less than 340 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 330 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 320 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 310 ng/ml. In some 20 embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 300 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 290 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 280 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean 25 increase in serum ferritin that is less than 270 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 260 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 250 ng/ml. In some 30 embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 240 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 230 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 220 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 210 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 200 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the

ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 190 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 180 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 170 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 160 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 150 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 140 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 130 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 120 ng/ml. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 110 ng/ml. The above boundaries are disclosed in this format for purposes of efficiency, and any of the above boundaries can be combined with any method, formulation, upper boundary as disclosed above, or combination thereof.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin selected from about 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 297, 298, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 307, 308, 309 and 310 mg/dl when administered for a period of 52 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of 302 mg/dl when administered for a period of 52 weeks.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin from about 1 – 100 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin from about 10 – 90 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin from about 20 – 80 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin from about 30 – 70 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin from about 40 – 60 %.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin selected from 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59 and 60 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin selected from 48.0, 48.1, 48.2, 48.3, 48.4, 48.5, 48.6, 48.7, 48.9, 49.0, 49.1, 49.2, 49.3, 49.4, 49.5, 49.6, 49.7, 49.8, 49.9, 50.0, 50.1, 50.2, 50.3, 50.4, 50.5, 50.6, 50.7, 50.8, 50.9 and 50.8 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of 50.8 %. In some

embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of 50.8 % when administered over a period of 52 weeks.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is greater than 1%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is greater than 10%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is greater than 20%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is greater than 30%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is greater than 40%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is greater than 50%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is greater than 60%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is greater than 70%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is greater than 80%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is greater than 90%. The above boundaries are disclosed in this format for purposes of efficiency, and any of the above boundaries can be combined with any method, formulation, lower boundary as disclosed below, or combination thereof.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 100%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 90%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 80%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 70%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 60%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 50%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 40%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 30%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 20%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin that is less than 10 %. The above boundaries are disclosed in this format for purposes of efficiency, and any of the above boundaries can be combined with any method, formulation, upper boundary disclosed above, or combination thereof.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin selected from 49.0, 49.1, 49.2, 49.3, 49.4, 49.5, 49.6, 39.7, 49.8, 49.9 and 50.0 % when administered for a period of 52 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin of 49.2 % when administered for a period of 52 weeks.

5 In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in serum ferritin shown in Table C:

**Table C:**

Mean Ferritin (ng/mL) <sup>1</sup>	Active Controls (n=134)	Ferric Citrate (n=249)
Baseline (Day 0)	616	595
Week 12	657	751
Week 24	658	847
Week 36	636	863
Week 48	627	882
Week 52	625	897
Change from Baseline at Week 52 % Change from Baseline	9 1.5%	302 50.8%
LS Mean Difference from Active Control Group at Week 52 <sup>2</sup> p-value <sup>2</sup>		286 p<0.0001

<sup>1</sup> Last observation carried forward was used for missing data.

<sup>2</sup> The LS Mean treatment difference and p-value is created via an ANCOVA model with treatment as the fixed effect and baseline as the covariate.

10 In some embodiments, CKD patients, such as ESRD patients, treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience maintenance of their serum ferritin levels such that their serum ferritin levels remain substantially unchanged during administration of the ferric citrate.

15

### ***Transferrin Saturation (TSAT)***

20

In addition to stored iron, a small amount of iron, typically about 3 to 4 mg, circulates through the blood plasma bound to a protein called transferrin. Therefore, serum iron levels can be represented by the amount of iron circulating in the blood that is bound to the protein transferrin. Transferrin is a glycoprotein produced by the liver that can bind one or two ferric iron (iron(III) or Fe<sup>3+</sup>) ions. It is the most prevalent and dynamic carrier of iron in the blood, and therefore is an essential component of the body's ability to transport stored iron for use

throughout the body. Transferrin saturation (or TSAT) is measured as a percentage and is calculated as the ratio of serum iron and total iron-binding capacity, multiplied by 100. This value tells a clinician how much serum iron is actually bound to the total amount of transferrin that is available to bind iron. For instance, a TSAT value of 35% means that 35% of the 5 available iron-binding sites of transferrin in a blood sample is occupied by iron. In a non-CKD patient, typical TSAT values are approximately 15–50% for males and 12–45% for females. In a CKD patient, however, TSAT values are typically markedly reduced as the amount of iron available to be bound by transferrin is decreased, which occurs as the body loses its ability to absorb and store iron.

10 In some embodiments, CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience an increase in TSAT values. In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides methods of increasing transferrin saturation (TSAT) in a patient in need thereof, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to CKD patient, e.g., an ESRD patient or a ND-CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides an increase in TSAT in the patient. In some 15 embodiments, the present disclosure provides methods of increasing transferrin saturation (TSAT), the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to an end-stage renal disease patient at a dose of ferric iron ranging from 210 mg – 2,520 mg, wherein the ferric citrate provides an increase in TSAT in the patient. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered for a period of 12 weeks, in some embodiments for a period of 24 weeks, in some embodiments for a 20 period of 36 weeks, in some embodiments for a period of 48 weeks, and in some embodiments for a period of 52 weeks.

25 In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in transferrin saturation (TSAT) of 1 – 20 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in transferrin saturation (TSAT) of 1 – 15 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in transferrin saturation (TSAT) of 1 – 12 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in transferrin saturation (TSAT) of 5 – 10 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in transferrin saturation (TSAT) of 6 – 9 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in 30 transferrin saturation (TSAT) of 8%.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in transferrin saturation (TSAT) greater than 1%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in transferrin saturation (TSAT) greater than 2%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in transferrin saturation (TSAT) greater than 3%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in transferrin saturation (TSAT) greater than 4%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in transferrin saturation (TSAT) greater than 5%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in transferrin saturation (TSAT) greater than 6%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in transferrin saturation (TSAT) greater than 7%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in transferrin saturation (TSAT) greater than 8%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT greater than 9%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT greater than 10%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT greater than 11%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT greater than 12%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT greater than 13%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT greater than 14%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT greater than 15%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT greater than 16%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT greater than 17%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT greater than 18%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT greater than 19%. The above boundaries are disclosed in this format for purposes of efficiency, and any of the above ranges can be combined with any method, formulation, lower boundary as disclosed below, or combination thereof.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in transferrin saturation (TSAT) less than 20%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT less than 19%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT less than 18%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT less than 17%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT less than 16%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT less than 15%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT less than 14%. In

some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT less than 13%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT less than 12%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT less than 11%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT less than 10%. In some 5 embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT less than 9%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT less than 8%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT less than 7%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT less than 6%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT less than 5%. In some 10 embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT less than 4%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT less than 3 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in TSAT less than 2 %. The above boundaries are disclosed in this format for purposes of efficiency, and any of the above ranges 15 can be combined with any method, formulation, upper boundary disclosed above, or combination thereof.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in transferrin saturation (TSAT) selected from 5 %, 6 %, 7 %, 8 %, 9 %, 10 %, 11 %, 12 %, 13 %, 14 %, 15 %, 16 %, 17 % and 18 % when administered for a period of 52 weeks. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in transferrin saturation (TSAT) of 8 % when administered for a 20 period of 52 weeks.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in transferrin saturation (TSAT) shown in Table D:

**Table D:**

Mean TSAT (%) <sup>1</sup>	Active Controls (n=131)	Ferric Citrate (n=244)
Baseline (Day 0)	31	31
Week 12	31	40
Week 24	32	40
Week 36	30	40
Week 48	29	41
Week 52	30	39
Change from Baseline at Week 52 % Change from Baseline	-1 -3.2%	8 25.8%
LS Mean Difference from Active Control Group at Week 52 <sup>2</sup> p-value <sup>2</sup>		10 p<0.0001

<sup>1</sup> Last observation carried forward was used for missing data.

<sup>2</sup> The LS Mean treatment difference and p-value is created via an ANCOVA model with treatment as the fixed effect and baseline as the covariate.

In some embodiments, CKD patients, such as ESRD patients, treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience maintenance of their TSAT values such that their transferrin saturation (TSAT) value remains substantially unchanged during administration of the ferric citrate.

### ***Hematocrit***

The hematocrit, also referred to as packed cell volume or erythrocyte volume fraction, is the volume percentage of red blood cells in the blood. For non-CKD patients, the hematocrit is typically about 45% of blood volume for men and about 40% of blood volume for women. In CKD patients, however, the hematocrit is often significantly depleted due to poor iron absorption and/or poor iron storage capacity.

The ferric citrate disclosed herein may be administered to CKD patients to increase hematocrit. The exact timing of administration will necessarily vary from patient to patient, depending upon, for example, the severity of CKD experienced by the CKD patient, the level of iron absorption the patient is or is not experiencing, and the judgment of the treating health care

professional. In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides methods of increasing hematocrit in a patient in need thereof, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, e.g., an ESRD patient or ND-CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides for an increase in the hematocrit of the patient. In some embodiments, the present disclosure

5 provides methods of increasing hematocrit in a CKD patient, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to the patient at a dose of ferric iron ranging from 210 mg – 2,520 mg, wherein the ferric citrate provides for an increase in the hematocrit of the patient. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered for a period of 52 weeks. In some embodiments, the increase is from 1% to 30%. In some embodiments, the increase is from 1% to 20%. In

10 some embodiments, the increase is from 1% to 15%, in some embodiments the increase is from 1% to 12%, in some embodiments the increase is from 1% to 10%, in some embodiments the increase is from 1% to 9%, in some embodiments the increase is from 1% to 8%, in some embodiments the increase is from 1% to 7%, in some embodiments the increase is from 1% to 6%, in some embodiments the increase is from 1% to 5%, in some embodiments the increase is from 1% to 4%, in some embodiments the increase is from 1% to 3%, and in some embodiments the increase is from 1% to 2%.

15

In some embodiments, CKD patients, such as ESRD patients, treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience maintenance of their hematocrit level such that their overall volume of red blood cells in the blood remains substantially unchanged during administration of

20 the ferric citrate.

### ***Hemoglobin Concentration***

Hemoglobin concentration, also referred to as the mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration or MCHC, is a measure of the concentration of hemoglobin protein in a given volume of packed red blood cells. It is typically calculated by dividing the total amount of hemoglobin protein by the hematocrit. Hemoglobin concentration may also be measured as a mass or weight fraction and presented as a percentage (%). Numerically, however, the mass or molar measure of hemoglobin concentration and the mass or weight fraction (%) are identical, assuming a red blood cell density of 1g/ml and negligible hemoglobin loss in the blood plasma.

25

30 For non-CKD patients, a typical mass or molar measure of hemoglobin concentration ranges from 32 g/dl – 36 g/dl, or from 4.9 mmol/L to 5.5 mmol/L, respectively. In a CKD patient,

however, the hemoglobin concentration can be greatly reduced as the body loses its ability to absorb and store iron.

In some embodiments, CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience an increase in hemoglobin concentration. In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides methods of increasing hemoglobin concentration in a patient in need thereof, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, e.g., an ESRD patient or ND-CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides an increase in hemoglobin concentration in the patient. In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides methods of increasing hemoglobin concentration, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient at a dose of ferric iron ranging from 210 mg – 2,520 mg, wherein the ferric citrate provides an increase in hemoglobin concentration in the patient. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered for a period of 12 weeks, in some embodiments for a period of 24 weeks, in some embodiments for a period of 36 weeks, in some embodiments for a period of 48 weeks, and in some embodiments for a period of 52 weeks.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration of 0.1 – 5.0 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration of 0.1 – 4.0 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration of 0.1 – 3.0 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration of 0.1 – 2.0 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration of 0.1 – 1.0 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration of 0.2 – 0.9 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration of 0.3 – 0.8 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration of 0.3 – 0.7 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration of 0.3 – 0.6 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration of 0.3 – 0.5 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration of 0.4 g/dl.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration greater than 0.1 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration greater than 0.2 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric

citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration greater than 0.3 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration greater than 0.4 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration greater than 0.5 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration greater than 0.6 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration greater than 0.7 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration greater than 0.8 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration greater than 0.9 g/dl. The above boundaries are disclosed in this format for purposes of efficiency, and any of the above boundaries can be combined with any method, formulation, lower boundary as disclosed below, or combination thereof.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration of less than 1.0 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration less than 0.9 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration less than 0.8 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration less than 0.7 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration less than 0.6 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration less than 0.5 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration less than 0.4 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration less than 0.3 g/dl. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration less than 0.2 g/dl. The above boundaries are disclosed in this format for purposes of efficiency, and any of the above boundaries can be combined with any method, formulation, upper boundary disclosed above, or combination thereof.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean increase in hemoglobin concentration shown in Table E:

**Table E:**

Mean Hemoglobin (g/dL) <sup>1</sup>	Active Controls (n=130)	Ferric Citrate (n=244)
Baseline (Day 0)	11.7	11.6
Week 52	11.1	11.4
Change from Baseline at Week 52	-0.6	-0.2
LS Mean Difference from Active Control Group at Week 52 <sup>2</sup>		0.4
p-value <sup>2</sup>		p=0.0105

<sup>1</sup> Last observation carried forward was used for missing data.

<sup>2</sup> The LS Mean treatment difference and p-value is created via an ANCOVA model with treatment as the fixed effect and baseline as the covariate.

In some embodiments, CKD patients, such as ESRD patients, treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience maintenance of their hemoglobin concentration such that their hemoglobin level remains substantially unchanged during administration of the ferric citrate.

#### *Total Iron Binding Capacity (TIBC)*

Total iron-binding capacity (TIBC) is a measure of the blood's capacity to bind iron with the protein transferrin. TIBC is typically measured by drawing a blood sample and measuring the maximum amount of iron that the sample can carry. Thus, TIBC indirectly measures transferrin, which is a protein that transports iron in the blood. For non-CKD patients, a typical mass or molar measure of TIBC is in the range of 250–370 µg/dL or 45-66 µmol/L, respectively. In CKD patients, however, the TIBC is typically increased above these levels, as the body must produce more transferrin in an attempt to deliver iron to erythrocyte precursor cells to produce hemoglobin.

In some embodiments, CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience a reduction in TIBC. In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides methods of reducing TIBC in patient in need thereof, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, e.g., an ESRD patient or ND-CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides for a reduction in the TIBC of the patient. In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides methods of reducing TIBC in a CKD patient, the methods comprising orally

administering ferric citrate to the patient at a dose of ferric iron ranging from 210 mg – 2,520 mg, wherein the ferric citrate provides for a reduction in the TIBC of the patient. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered for a period of 52 weeks. In some embodiments, the reduction is from 0.1% to 30%, in some embodiments the reduction is from 0.1% to 28%, in 5 some embodiments the reduction is from 0.1% to 26%, in some embodiments the reduction is from 0.1% to 25%, in some embodiments the reduction is from 0.1% to 24%, in some embodiments the reduction is from 0.1% to 23%, in some embodiments the reduction is from 0.1% to 22%, in some embodiments the reduction is from 0.1% to 21%, in some embodiments the reduction is from 0.1% to 20%, in some embodiments the reduction is from 0.1% to 15%, in 10 some embodiments the reduction is from 0.1% to 10%, and in some embodiments the reduction is from 0.1% to 5%.

In some embodiments, CKD patients, such as ESRD patients, treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience maintenance of their TIBC such that their TIBC level remains substantially unchanged during administration of the ferric citrate.

15

### ***Iron Absorption***

CKD patients may suffer from low or inadequate iron absorption that can lead to other health concerns such as iron depletion and anemia. For humans, the majority of iron absorbed from food or supplements is absorbed in the small intestine, particularly in the duodenum, by 20 specialized enterocyte cells present in the duodenal lining. These cells have specialized transporter molecules that allow them to move iron from the intestinal lumen into the body. To be absorbed, dietary iron must be present as part of a protein, such as heme, or it must be in ferrous (iron(II) or  $Fe^{2+}$ ) form. Enterocytes express a ferric reductase enzyme, Dcytb, which reduces ferric iron (iron(III) or  $Fe^{3+}$ ) to ferrous iron. A divalent metal transporter protein then 25 transports the iron across the enterocyte's cell membrane and into the cell.

In a non-CKD person, the body regulates iron levels by changing the expression level of the proteins relating to one or more of these steps. For example, in response to iron-deficiency anemia, cells may produce more of the Dcytb enzyme and more of the metal transporter protein in order to increase the amount of iron absorbed from the intestinal lumen. In CKD patients, the 30 body's ability to regulate one or more of these steps is impaired, which in turn leads to reduced or inadequate iron absorption.

CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein may experience increased iron absorption. In some embodiments, the iron that is absorbed is provided by the ferric citrate that is administered to the CKD patients; it is the ferric iron ion that is absorbed into the body from the intestinal lumen. Because the ferric citrate is administered orally, the 5 increased iron absorption occurs through the intestine. While not wishing to be bound by any theory, it is believed that the increased iron absorption may be attributable to the presence of citrate in the ferric citrate administered to the CKD patient. Some studies have shown that administration of iron in combination with citrate (the conjugate base of citric acid) serves to significantly increase (e.g., by several fold) the amount of iron absorbed from dietary sources 10 (see, e.g., Ballot, *et al.*, *Br. J. Nutr.* (1987) 57, 331–343; Gillooly, *et al.*, *Br. J. Nutr.* (1983) 49, 331–342; Zhang, *et al.*, *Eur. J. Nutr.* (2007) 46, 95–102; and Salovaara, *et al.*, *J. Agric. Food Chem.* (2002) 50, 6233–6238).

The ferric citrate disclosed herein may be administered to CKD patients to increase iron absorption. The exact timing of administration will necessarily vary from patient to patient, 15 depending upon, for example, the stage of CKD experienced by the CKD patient, the level of iron absorption the patient is or is not experiencing, and the judgment of the treating health care professional. In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides methods of increasing iron absorption in an end-stage renal disease patient, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to the patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides for an increase in the amount of 20 iron absorbed by the patient. In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides methods of increasing iron absorption in an end-stage renal disease patient, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to the patient at a dose of ferric iron ranging from 210 mg – 2,520 mg, wherein the ferric citrate provides for an increase in the amount of iron absorbed by the patient. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered for a period of 52 weeks.

25

### ***Iron Deficiency and Anemia***

As stated above, most well-nourished, non-CKD people living in industrialized countries have approximately 4 to 5 grams of iron stored within their bodies in some manner (e.g., as 30 circulating iron or stored iron or both). A decrease in this amount represents an iron deficiency, which is commonly seen in CKD patients. Symptoms of iron deficiency can occur in CKD patients before the condition has progressed to iron-deficiency anemia. Symptoms of iron

deficiency can include, for example, fatigue, dizziness, pallor, hair loss, irritability, weakness, pica, brittle or grooved nails, Plummer-Vinson syndrome (painful atrophy of the mucous membrane covering the tongue, pharynx and esophagus), impaired immune function, pagophagia, and restless legs syndrome, among others.

5 CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein may experience an improvement in iron deficiency. In some embodiments, CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience a decrease in iron deficiency. This decrease may occur as the total amount of iron in the body of the CKD patient is increased through the administration of the ferric citrate disclosed herein. In some embodiments, CKD patients treated according to the 10 methods disclosed herein experience a decrease in one or more symptoms of iron deficiency, wherein the symptoms are selected from fatigue, dizziness, pallor, hair loss, irritability, weakness, pica, brittle or grooved nails, Plummer-Vinson syndrome (painful atrophy of the mucous membrane covering the tongue, pharynx and esophagus), impaired immune function, pagophagia, restless legs syndrome and combinations of the foregoing. In some embodiments, 15 CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience the elimination of one or more symptoms of iron deficiency, wherein the symptoms are selected from fatigue, dizziness, pallor, hair loss, irritability, weakness, pica, brittle or grooved nails, Plummer-Vinson syndrome (painful atrophy of the mucous membrane covering the tongue, pharynx and esophagus), impaired immune function, pagophagia, restless legs syndrome and combinations of 20 the foregoing.

In some embodiments, the iron deficiency is anemia. In some embodiments, the iron deficiency is iron-deficiency anemia. Iron-deficiency anemia is characterized by low levels of circulating red blood cells and, in CKD patients, can be caused by insufficient dietary intake, absorption and/or storage of iron. Red blood cells, which contain iron bound in hemoglobin 25 proteins, and are typically not formed when the amount of iron in the body is deficient.

Iron-deficiency anemia is typically characterized by pallor (pale color resulting from reduced oxyhemoglobin in the skin and mucous membranes), fatigue, lightheadedness, and weakness. However, signs of iron-deficiency anemia can vary between CKD patients. Because iron deficiency in CKD patients tends to develop slowly, adaptation to the disease can occur and 30 it can go unrecognized for some time. In some instances, patients with CKD can develop dyspnea (trouble breathing), pica (unusual obsessive food cravings), anxiety often resulting in

OCD-type compulsions and obsessions, irritability or sadness, angina, constipation, sleepiness, tinnitus, mouth ulcers, palpitations, hair loss, fainting or feeling faint, depression, breathlessness on exertion, twitching muscles, pale yellow skin, tingling (numbness) or burning sensations, missed menstrual cycle(s), heavy menstrual period(s), slow social development, glossitis

5 (inflammation or infection of the tongue), angular cheilitis (inflammatory lesions at the mouth's corners), koilonychia (spoon-shaped nails) or nails that are weak or brittle, poor appetite, pruritus (generalized itchiness), Plummer-Vinson syndrome (painful atrophy of the mucous membrane covering the tongue, pharynx and esophagus), and restless legs syndrome, among others.

Anemia is typically diagnosed based on a complete blood count measured from a blood 10 sample from a patient. Typically, automatic counters are utilized that report the total number of red blood cells in a sample, the hemoglobin level, and the size of the red blood cells by flow cytometry. However, a stained blood smear on a microscope slide can be examined using a microscope in order to count the total number of red blood cells in a sample and diagnose 15 anemia. In many countries, four parameters (red blood cell count, hemoglobin concentration, mean corpuscular volume and red blood cell distribution width) are measured to determine the presence of anemia. The World Health Organization has set certain threshold values for 20 hemoglobin levels (Hb), such that when an CKD patient's hemoglobin levels fall below those values, a diagnosis of anemia may be made. Those values are: for children 0.5–5.0 yrs of age, Hb = 11.0 g/dL or 6.8 mmol/L; for children 5–12 yrs years of age, Hb = 11.5 g/ dL or 7.1 mmol/L; for teens 12–15 yrs of age, Hb = 12.0 g/ dL or 7.4 mmol/L; for non-pregnant women 15 years of age and older, Hb = 12.0 g/ dL or 7.4 mmol/L; for pregnant women, Hb = 11.0 g/ dL or 6.8 mmol/L; and for men greater than 15 yrs of age, Hb = 13.0 g/ dL or 8.1 mmol/L.

CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein may experience an improvement in anemia. CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein may 25 experience an improvement in iron-deficiency anemia. In some embodiments, CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience a decrease in one or more symptoms of anemia or iron-deficiency anemia. In some embodiments, CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience the elimination of one or more symptoms of anemia or iron-deficiency anemia. In some embodiments, the one or more symptoms of 30 anemia or iron-deficiency anemia are selected from pallor, fatigue, lightheadedness, weakness, dyspnea, pica, anxiety, irritability or sadness, angina, constipation, sleepiness, tinnitus, mouth

ulcers, palpitations, hair loss, fainting or feeling faint, depression, breathlessness on exertion, twitching muscles, pale yellow skin, tingling (numbness) or burning sensations, missed menstrual cycle(s), heavy menstrual period(s), slow social development, glossitis, angular cheilitis, koilonychia, poor appetite, pruritus, Plummer-Vinson syndrome, restless legs syndrome 5 and combinations of the foregoing.

In some embodiments, CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein may experience an improvement in anemia and/or iron-deficiency anemia because hemoglobin levels are raised and/or maintained above a threshold level. In some embodiments, a method of treating anemia in a CKD patient is disclosed, the method comprising orally administering ferric citrate to the CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides a hemoglobin level in the CKD patient that is at or above a level ranging from 11.0 g/dL - 13.0 g/dL, including a level selected from 11.0 g/dL, 11.5 g/dL, 12.0 g/dL, and 13.0 g/dL. In some embodiments, a method of treating anemia in a CKD patient is disclosed, the method comprising orally administering ferric citrate to the CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides a hemoglobin level in the CKD patient that is at or above a level selected from 6.8 mmol/L, 7.1 mmol/L, 7.4 mmol/L, and 8.1 mmol/L. In some embodiments, a method of treating anemia in a male CKD patient is disclosed, the method comprising orally administering ferric citrate to the male CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides a hemoglobin level in the male CKD patient that is at or above a level selected from 13.0 g/dL and 8.1 mmol/L. In some embodiments, a method of treating anemia in 10 a female CKD patient is disclosed, the method comprising orally administering ferric citrate to the female CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides a hemoglobin level in the female CKD patient that is at or above a level selected from 12.0 g/dL and 7.4 mmol/L. In some embodiments, a method of treating anemia in a male CKD patient is disclosed, the method comprising orally administering ferric citrate to the male CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides a hemoglobin level in the male CKD patient that is at or above a level selected from 13.0 g/dL and 8.1 mmol/L. In some embodiments, a method of treating anemia in a female CKD patient is disclosed, the method comprising orally administering ferric citrate to the female CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides a hemoglobin level in the female CKD patient that is at or above a level selected from 12.0 g/dL and 7.4 mmol/L. In some embodiments, a method of treating anemia in a male CKD patient is disclosed, the method comprising orally administering ferric citrate to the male CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides a hemoglobin level in the male CKD patient that is at or above a level selected from 13.0 g/dL and 8.1 mmol/L. In some embodiments, a method of treating anemia in a female CKD patient is disclosed, the method comprising orally administering ferric citrate to the female CKD patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides a hemoglobin level in the female CKD patient that is at or above a level selected from 12.0 g/dL and 7.4 mmol/L.

In some embodiments, ferric citrate for use in a method of treating anemia in a CKD patient is disclosed, wherein the ferric citrate provides a hemoglobin level in the CKD patient that is at or above a level ranging from 11.0 g/dL - 13.0 g/dL, including a level selected from 11.0 g/dL, 11.5 g/dL, 12.0 g/dL, and 13.0 g/dL. In some embodiments, ferric citrate for use in a method of treating anemia in a CKD patient is disclosed, wherein the ferric citrate provides a hemoglobin level in the CKD patient that is at or above a level selected from 6.8 mmol/L, 7.1 mmol/L, 7.4 mmol/L, and 8.1 mmol/L. In some embodiments, ferric citrate for use in a method 15 of treating anemia in a male CKD patient is disclosed, wherein the ferric citrate provides a hemoglobin level in the male CKD patient that is at or above a level selected from 13.0 g/dL and 8.1 mmol/L. In some embodiments, ferric citrate for use in a method of treating anemia in a female CKD patient is disclosed, wherein the ferric citrate provides a hemoglobin level in the female CKD patient that is at or above a level selected from 12.0 g/dL and 7.4 mmol/L. In some embodiments, ferric citrate for use in a method 20 of treating anemia in a male CKD patient is disclosed, wherein the ferric citrate provides a hemoglobin level in the male CKD patient that is at or above a level selected from 13.0 g/dL and 8.1 mmol/L. In some embodiments, ferric citrate for use in a method of treating anemia in a female CKD patient is disclosed, wherein the ferric citrate provides a hemoglobin level in the female CKD patient that is at or above a level selected from 12.0 g/dL and 7.4 mmol/L. In some embodiments, ferric citrate for use in a method 25 of treating anemia in a male CKD patient is disclosed, wherein the ferric citrate provides a hemoglobin level in the male CKD patient that is at or above a level selected from 13.0 g/dL and 8.1 mmol/L. In some embodiments, ferric citrate for use in a method of treating anemia in a female CKD patient is disclosed, wherein the ferric citrate provides a hemoglobin level in the female CKD patient that is at or above a level selected from 12.0 g/dL and 7.4 mmol/L. In some embodiments, ferric citrate for use in a method 30 of treating anemia in a male CKD patient is disclosed, wherein the ferric citrate provides a hemoglobin level in the male CKD patient that is at or above a level selected from 13.0 g/dL and 8.1 mmol/L. In some embodiments, ferric citrate for use in a method of treating anemia in a female CKD patient is disclosed, wherein the ferric citrate provides a hemoglobin level in the female CKD patient that is at or above a level selected from 12.0 g/dL and 7.4 mmol/L.

8.1 mmol/L. In some embodiments, ferric citrate for use in a method of treating anemia in a female CKD patient is disclosed, wherein the ferric citrate provides a hemoglobin level in the female CKD patient that is at or above a level selected from 12.0 g/dL and 7.4 mmol/L.

5            ***Intravenous Iron***

Patients with CKD may be at risk for, or may suffer from, iron deficiency. Iron deficiency, also referred to as sideropenia or hypoferremia, is a common type of nutritional deficiency, and can occur in a CKD patient as the body loses its ability to absorb iron from the intestinal lumen and/or to store iron for long-term use. When a loss of or decrease in iron in the 10 body is not compensated for by, for example, a sufficient intake of iron from the diet, iron deficiency can develop over time. When a state of iron deficiency is left uncorrected, it can lead to iron-deficiency anemia. Therefore, a direct consequence of untreated, long-term iron deficiency can be iron-deficiency anemia and, in some instances, anemia.

In CKD patients, there are typically three means by which iron-deficiency anemia can be 15 treated. The first approach is by eating foods that are high in iron. If that is insufficient, then a clinician may prescribe oral iron supplements. However, many oral iron supplements cause numerous adverse side effects in CKD patients, which leads to patient non-compliance. In those instances where a CKD patient cannot take oral iron supplements, he or she may have to have intravenous iron supplementation.

20            Intravenous (IV) iron supplementation is a method of delivering iron by injection with a needle, either through a muscle or into a vein. CKD patients who are receiving IV iron usually do so because they cannot take oral iron. In particular, ESRD patients are on dialysis and often lose blood during dialysis. These patients are usually also taking an erythropoiesis-stimulating agent (ESA – see below) and may need extra iron because of that as well. Intravenous iron is 25 delivered into the CKD patient's vein through a needle that is attached to an IV bag that contains an iron solution. The procedure takes place in a doctor's office or a clinic and may take up to several hours, depending on which treatment the physician has prescribed. The CKD patient usually receives iron injections over the course of several visits until his or her iron levels are correct. In some instances, an CKD patient may require permanent IV iron supplementation.

The side effects of IV iron supplementation include: gastrointestinal pains, including nausea and cramps; problems breathing; skin problems, including rash; chest pain; low blood pressure; and anaphylaxis, among others.

CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein may experience a 5 decrease in the need for IV iron supplementation. In some embodiments, CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience a decrease in cumulative IV iron supplementation. In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides methods of reducing intravenous (IV) iron use in a patient in need thereof, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, particularly an ESRD patient, wherein the ferric 10 citrate provides for a reduction in IV iron use in the patient. In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides methods of reducing intravenous (IV) iron use in an end-stage renal disease patient, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to the patient at a dose of ferric iron ranging from 210 mg – 2,520 mg, wherein the ferric citrate provides for a reduction in IV iron use in the patient. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered for a period of 52 15 weeks.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake from 1 – 100%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake from 10 – 90 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake from 20 – 80 %. In some 20 embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake from 30 – 70 %. The above ranges are disclosed in this format for purposes of efficiency, and any of the above ranges can be combined with any method, formulation, or combination thereof.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake from 40 – 60 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean 25 reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake selected from 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59 and 60 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake selected from 51.0, 51.1, 51.2, 51.3, 51.4, 51.5, 51.6, 51.7, 51.9 and 52.0 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake of 51.6 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean 30 reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake of 51.6 % when administered over a period of 52 weeks.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is greater than 10%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is greater than 20%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is greater than 30%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is greater than 40%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is greater than 50%.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is selected from less than 100%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is less than 90%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is less than 80%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is less than 70%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is less than 60%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is less than 50%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is less than 40%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is less than 30%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is less than 20%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is less than 10 %. The above boundaries are disclosed in this format for purposes of efficiency, and any of the above boundaries can be combined with any method, formulation, upper boundary as disclosed above, or combination thereof.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is greater than 60%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is greater than 70%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is greater than %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is greater than 90 %. The above boundaries are disclosed in this format for purposes of efficiency, and any of the above boundaries can be combined with any method, formulation, lower boundary as disclosed below, or combination thereof.

In some embodiments, CKD patients, such as ESRD patients, treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience maintenance of the amount of IV iron supplementation needed such that the total amount of IV iron supplementation received by the CKD patient remains substantially unchanged during administration of the ferric citrate.

5

### *Erythropoiesis-Stimulating Agents*

In addition to the means of controlling iron-deficiency anemia in CKD patients set forth above, CKD patient, particularly an ESRD patient, may also take one or more erythropoiesis-stimulating agents (ESAs) in an effort to control anemia. ESAs work by helping the body to produce red blood cells. These red blood cells are then released from the bone marrow into the bloodstream where they help maintain blood iron levels. Erythropoiesis-stimulating agents, commonly abbreviated as ESAs, are agents that are similar in structure and/or function to the cytokine erythropoietin, which stimulates red blood cell production (erythropoiesis) in the body. Typical ESAs, structurally and biologically, are similar to naturally occurring protein erythropoietin. Examples of commercially available ESAs include Erythropoietin (Epo), Epoetin alfa (Procrit/Epogen), Epoetin beta (NeoRecormon), Darbepoetin alfa (Aranesp), and Methoxy polyethylene glycol-epoetin beta (Mircera). The two ESAs presently approved for marketing in the U.S. are Epoetin alfa (Procrit, Epogen), and Darbepoetin alfa (Aranesp).

ESAs are commonly given to ESRD patients. These patients usually have lower hemoglobin levels because they can't produce enough erythropoietin. The side effects that occur most often with ESA use include: high blood pressure; swelling; fever; dizziness; nausea; and pain at the site of the injection, among others. In addition to these side effects, there are several safety issues that result from ESA use. ESAs increase the risk of venous thromboembolism (blood clots in the veins). ESAs can also cause hemoglobin to rise too high, which puts the patient at higher risk for heart attack, stroke, heart failure, and death.

CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein may experience a decrease in the amount of ESAs needed to maintain hemoglobin levels. In some embodiments, CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience a decrease in ESA use. In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides methods of reducing ESA use in a CKD patient, particularly an ESRD patient, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to the patient, wherein the ferric citrate provides for a reduction in ESA use in the patient.

In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides methods of reducing ESA use in an end-stage renal disease patient, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to the patient at a dose of ferric iron ranging from 210 mg – 2,520 mg, wherein the ferric citrate provides for a reduction in ESA use in the patient. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered 5 for a period of 52 weeks.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a decrease in median ESA intake is from 1 – 50 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a decrease in median ESA intake is from 10 – 40 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a decrease in median ESA intake is from 20 – 30 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a decrease in median 10 ESA intake selected from 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29 and 30 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a decrease in median ESA intake selected from 27.0, 27.1, 27.2, 27.3, 27.4, 27.5, 27.6, 27.7, 27.9 and 28.0 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a decrease in median ESA intake of 27.1 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a decrease in median ESA intake of 27.1 % when administered over a period of 52 weeks.

15 In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is greater than 20%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is greater than 21%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is greater than 22%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average 20 cumulative IV iron intake that is greater than 23%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is greater than 24%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is greater than 25%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is greater than 26%. In some embodiments, 25 the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is greater than 27%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is greater than 28 %. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is greater than 29 %. The above boundaries are disclosed in this format for purposes of efficiency, and any of the above 30 boundaries can be combined with any method, formulation, lower boundary as disclosed below, or combination thereof.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is less than 30%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is less than 29%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is less than 28%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is less than 27%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is less than 26%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is less than 25%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is less than 24%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is less than 23%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is less than 22%. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate provides a mean reduction in average cumulative IV iron intake that is less than 21 %. The above boundaries are disclosed in this format for purposes of efficiency, and any of the above boundaries can be combined with any method, formulation, upper boundary as disclosed above, or combination thereof.

In some embodiments, CKD patients, particularly ESRD patients, treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience maintenance of the amount of ESAs needed to maintain hemoglobin levels such that the total amount of ESA use by the patient remains substantially unchanged during administration of the ferric citrate.

#### *Adverse Cardiac Events*

Cardiovascular disease is a frequent cause of death in patients with chronic kidney disease (CKD). Despite the high prevalence of traditional risk factors for atherosclerosis in patients with CKD, heart failure, arrhythmia, and sudden cardiac death constitute a disproportionately greater burden of cardiovascular related mortality in patients with CKD compared to coronary artery disease (CAD). Left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH) and left ventricular dysfunction are common non-atherosclerotic mechanisms of cardiovascular injury in CKD. Cardiac disease, including coronary artery disease, left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH) and heart failure (HF), is common in patients with chronic kidney disease (CKD). LVH appears to be increasingly prevalent as the glomerular filtration rate (GFR) declines and with increased

dialysis vintage. LVH has been found in as many as 47% of patients with chronic kidney disease (CKD) not yet on dialysis, with a higher prevalence and more severe LVH in those with increasingly lower degrees of kidney function (Elias MF, Sullivan LM, Elias PK, *et al.* Left ventricular mass, blood pressure, and lowered cognitive performance in the Framingham 5 offspring. *Hypertension* 2007; 49:439; Barrios V, Escobar C, Calderon A, *et al.* Prevalence of left ventricular hypertrophy detected by Cornell voltage-duration product in a hypertensive population. *Blood Press* 2008; 17:110; Ang D, Lang C. The prognostic value of the ECG in hypertension: where are we now? *J Hum Hypertens* 2008; 22:460; Levy D, Garrison RJ, Savage 10 DD, *et al.* Prognostic implications of echocardiographically determined left ventricular mass in the Framingham Heart Study. *N Engl J Med* 1990; 322:1561). Concentric LVH has been documented by echocardiography in 42% of patients at the start of dialysis (Koren MJ, Devereux RB, Casale PN, *et al.* Relation of left ventricular mass and geometry to morbidity and mortality in uncomplicated essential hypertension. *Ann Intern Med* 1991; 114:345) and in as many as 75 % of patients who have been on hemodialysis for 10 years (Verdecchia P, Carini G, Circo A, *et al.* 15 Left ventricular mass and cardiovascular morbidity in essential hypertension: the MAVI study. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2001; 38:1829).

LVH is an important predictor of mortality in patients with CKD and anemia has emerged as an important, independent risk factor for the development and progression of LVH and HF in CKD, and of adverse cardiovascular outcomes, including mortality (Verdecchia P, 20 Carini G, Circo A, *et al.* Left ventricular mass and cardiovascular morbidity in essential hypertension: the MAVI study. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2001; 38:1829; Beache GM, Herzka DA, Boxerman JL, *et al.* Attenuated myocardial vasodilator response in patients with hypertensive hypertension revealed by oxygenation-dependent magnetic resonance imaging. *Circulation* 2001; 104:1214; Carluccio E, Tommasi S, Bentivoglio M, *et al.* Prognostic value of left ventricular 25 hypertrophy and geometry in patients with a first, uncomplicated myocardial infarction. *Int J Cardiol* 2000; 74:177).

The presence of LVH is important clinically because it is associated with increases in the incidence of heart failure, ventricular arrhythmias, death following myocardial infarction, decreased LV ejection fraction, sudden cardiac death, aortic root dilation, and a cerebrovascular 30 event. In general, the development of heart failure with LVH results from depressed left

ventricular systolic function and/or diastolic dysfunction. The deleterious effect of left ventricular remodeling may be an important determinant of progression to overt heart failure.

Without intending to be limited by theory, potential mechanisms that may explain the relationship between anemia and the development of LVH include, effects of reduced oxygen delivery to the myocardium, perhaps leading to increased myocyte necrosis and apoptosis, anemia-related increased cardiac output and reduced systemic vascular resistance, increased oxidative stress, and activation of the sympathetic nervous system (Burke AP, Farb A, Liang YH, et al. Effect of hypertension and cardiac hypertrophy on coronary artery morphology in sudden cardiac death. *Circulation* 1996; 94:3138; Norton GR, Woodiwiss AJ, Gaasch WH, et al.

5 Heart failure in pressure overload hypertrophy. The relative roles of ventricular remodeling and myocardial dysfunction. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2002; 39:664; Gardin JM, McClelland R, Kitzman D, et al. M-mode echocardiographic predictors of six- to seven-year incidence of coronary heart disease, stroke, congestive heart failure, and mortality in an elderly cohort (the Cardiovascular Health Study). *Am J Cardiol* 2001; 87:1051).

10 15 In CKD, increasingly severe anemia is associated with more frequent and severe LVH, LV dilatation, HF, and poorer all-cause and cardiac prognosis in patients with CKD and cardiac disease. Given that increasing anemia in CKD is associated with increasingly severe degrees of LVH and heart failure, in accordance with aspects of the present disclosure, correcting deficiencies related to anemia have a beneficial impact on the clinical features of HF and LVH.

20 25 This includes the clinical manifestations of HF and the subsequent development and progression of LVH.

Several, mostly uncontrolled short-term studies, have suggested that improving anemia to Hgb levels of about 10 to 12 g/dL with erythropoietin in patients with HF and CKD improves clinical manifestations of HF and reduces hospitalization rates (Pierdomenico SD, Lapenna D, Cuccurullo F. Regression of echocardiographic left ventricular hypertrophy after 2 years of therapy reduces cardiovascular risk in patients with essential hypertension. *Am J Hypertens* 2008; 21:464). However, given the rather unexpected adverse outcomes associated with the use of erythropoietin, there is the possibility of an increased patient risk of morbidity and/or mortality with erythropoietin treatment aimed at meeting normal or near-normal Hgb levels.

30 LVH, which is itself a powerful prognostic marker for adverse cardiovascular outcomes in patients with CKD, appears to regress with improvement in Hgb levels from less than 10 g/dL

to levels up to above 10 g/dL in some patients. Again, without intending to be limited, it does not appear that raising the Hgb further to more normal levels leads to further regression of LVH or clinical improvement. Baseline geometry of LVH may be an important factor in determining the subsequent clinical response to anemia correction in patients with LVH.

5 An elevated level of fibroblast growth factor 23 (FGF-23), has come to be understood as a novel risk factor for cardiovascular disease. Elevated FGF-23 levels are associated independently with prevalent and incident LVH, cardiovascular disease events, and mortality in CKD and non-CKD populations. Furthermore, a recent study demonstrated that FGF-23 directly induces LVH, suggesting that FGF-23 is not simply a biomarker of cardiovascular risk. (Faul C, 10 Amaral AP, Oskouei B, *et al.* FGF23 induces left ventricular hypertrophy. *J Clin Invest.* 2011;121(11):4393-4408)

Increases in FGF23 levels help maintain serum phosphate in the normal range in CKD, FGF-23 concentrations increase with decreasing estimated glomerular filtration rate (eGFR) and help maintain normal phosphate homeostasis despite reduced renal mass by stimulating greater 15 per-nephron phosphate excretion and decreasing 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D levels. Parenteral iron suppresses renal tubular phosphate reabsorption and 1-alpha-hydroxylation of vitamin D resulting in hypophosphatemia. Data indicates that hypophosphatemia is mediated by an increase in FGF23.

20 Prospective studies in populations of pre-dialysis CKD, incident and prevalent ESRD, and kidney transplant recipients demonstrate that elevated FGF23 levels are independently associated with progression of CKD and development of cardiovascular events and mortality. It was originally thought that these observations were driven by elevated FGF23 levels acting as a highly sensitive biomarker of toxicity due to phosphate. However, FGF23 itself has now been shown to mediate 'off-target,' direct, end-organ toxicity in the heart, which suggests that 25 elevated FGF23 levels may be a novel mechanism of adverse outcomes in CKD.

In yet another aspect, the disclosure provides methods for the treatment of, or reduction of the incidence or risk of, adverse cardiac events in subjects with chronic kidney disease. In other embodiments, the disclosure provides methods of reducing mortality and morbidly related to adverse cardiac events in subjects with chronic kidney disease. In other embodiments, the 30 disclosure provides methods for the reduction of the incidence or risk of hospitalizations related to adverse cardiac events in subjects with chronic kidney disease. In some embodiments, the

methods comprise orally administering ferric citrate to a subject with CKD, e.g., a non-dialysis chronic kidney disease patient or an end stage renal disease patient, in an amount ranging from about 1 g to about 18 g per day. In some embodiments, the methods comprise orally administering ferric citrate to a subject with CKD, e.g., a non-dialysis chronic kidney disease patient or an end stage renal disease patient, in an amount ranging from about 6 g to about 12 g per day. In some embodiments, the method comprises raising the hemoglobin level of the subject, e.g., to a level above 10 g/dL, above 11 g/dL, above 12 g/dL, or above 13 g/dL. In other embodiments, the method comprises reducing FGF-23 levels of the subject, e.g., by at least 30%, at least 32%, at least 35%, at least 37%. In certain embodiments, intact FGF-23 levels are measured in serum or plasma. In other embodiments, C-terminal FGF-23 fragments are measured in serum or plasma from a CKD patient. In some embodiments, intact FGF-23 and C-terminal FGF-23 fragments are measured in serum or plasma from a CKD patient. Techniques known to one in the art or described herein can be used to measure intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments, such as Western blot, ELISAs and other immunoassays. In certain methods, the method comprises reducing serum phosphate concentrations.

Adverse cardiac events can include heart failure, ventricular arrhythmias, myocardial infarction (MI), decreased left ventricular (LV) ejection fraction, sudden cardiac death, aortic root dilation, cerebrovascular events (stroke), left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH), as measured, e.g., by echocardiography or ECG criteria such as the Sokolow-Lyon Amplitude, Cornell Amplitude, Sokolow-Lyon Product or Cornell Product.

In certain embodiments, provided herein are methods for reducing the incidence of one or more adverse cardiac events in a CKD patient, comprising administering ferric citrate to the patient. In certain embodiments, provided herein are methods for reducing the number and/or onset of one or more symptoms associated with one or more adverse cardiac events in a CKD patient, comprising administering ferric citrate to the patient. In certain embodiments, provided herein are methods for preventing one or more adverse cardiac events, or preventing the onset of one or more symptoms associated with one or more adverse cardiac events in a CKD patient, comprising administering ferric citrate to the patient. In one embodiment, the adverse cardiac event is heart failure. In another embodiment, the adverse cardiac event is a ventricular arrhythmia. In another embodiment, the adverse cardiac event is a myocardial infarction (MI). In another embodiment, the adverse event is decreased left ventricular (LV) ejection fraction. In

another embodiment, the adverse event is a sudden cardiac death. In another embodiment, the adverse event is a aortic root dilation. In another embodiment, the adverse event is a cerebrovascular event (stroke). In a specific embodiment, the adverse event is left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH).

5 In specific embodiments, provided herein are methods for treating one or more adverse cardiac events in a CKD patient, comprising: (a) assessing a CKD patient for one or more adverse cardiac events; and (b) administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient diagnosed with one or more adverse cardiac events. In some embodiments, provided herein are methods for treating one or more adverse cardiac events in a CKD patient, , comprising: (a) assessing a CKD patient 10 diagnosed with one or more adverse cardiac events for FGF-23 levels (e.g., intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments); and (b) administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient diagnosed with one or more adverse cardiac events that has elevated FGF-23 levels (e.g., intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments). In a specific embodiment, the method of treatment of one or more adverse cardiac events reduces the number symptoms associated with the one or more 15 adverse cardiac events and/or prevents onset of one or more symptoms associated with the one or more adverse cardiac events. In one embodiment, in accordance with the methods disclosed in this paragraph, the dose of ferric citrate administered to the patient per day may be: (i) reduced or maintained if the FGF-23 levels (e.g., intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments) are reduced in the CKD patient, or (ii) increased if the FGF-23 levels (e.g., intact FGF-23 and/or C- 20 terminal FGF-23 fragments) have not been reduced in the CKD patient. In another embodiment, in accordance with the methods disclosed in this paragraph, the dose of ferric citrate administered to the patient may be: (i) reduced if one, two or more of the iron storage parameters (e.g., hemoglobin concentration, serum ferritin levels, and/or transferrin saturation) exceed levels within the normal range for non-CKD patients (e.g., healthy humans), (ii) reduced if FGF- 25 23 levels (e.g., intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments) are reduced in the CKD patient and one, two or more of the iron storage parameters (e.g., hemoglobin, serum ferritin, and/or transferrin saturation) exceed levels within the normal range for non-CKD patients (e.g., healthy humans); and (iii) increased if the FGF-23 levels (e.g., intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments) in the CKD patient are still elevated relative to the normal healthy human 30 range of FGF-23 levels (e.g., intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments) or the FGF-23 levels (e.g., intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments) in the CKD patient have not

been reduced by at least 15%, 20%, or 30%; or (iv) increased if one, two or more of the iron storage parameters (*e.g.*, hemoglobin concentration, serum ferritin levels, and/or transferrin saturation) do not exceed levels within the normal range for non-CKD patients (*e.g.*, healthy humans) and the FGF-23 levels in the CKD patient are still elevated relative to the normal

5 healthy human range of FGF-23 levels (*e.g.*, intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments) or the FGF-23 levels (*e.g.*, intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments) in the CKD patient have not been reduced by at least 15%, 20%, or 30%. In certain embodiments, in accordance with the methods disclosed in this paragraph, the CKD patient is also monitored for the progression of one or more adverse cardiac events. In one embodiment, the adverse cardiac 10 event is heart failure. In another embodiment, the adverse cardiac event is a ventricular arrhythmia. In another embodiment, the adverse cardiac event is a myocardial infarction (MI). In another embodiment, the adverse event is decreased left ventricular (LV) ejection fraction. In another embodiment, the adverse event is a sudden cardiac death. In another embodiment, the adverse event is a aortic root dilation. In another embodiment, the adverse event is a cerebrovascular event (stroke). In a specific embodiment, the adverse event is left ventricular 15 hypertrophy (LVH).

In certain embodiments, provided herein are methods treating one or more adverse cardiac events in a CKD patient, comprising: (a) assessing a CKD patient for one or more adverse cardiac events; (b) administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient diagnosed with one or 20 more cardiac events; and (c) monitoring the CKD patient for one, two, or all of the following: (i) one or more iron storage parameters, (ii) FGF-23 levels (*e.g.*, intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments), and/or (iii) serum phosphorus levels. In some embodiments, provided herein are methods for treating one or more adverse cardiac events in a CKD patient, comprising: (a) assessing a CKD patient diagnosed with one or more adverse cardiac events for FGF-23 25 levels (*e.g.*, intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments); (b) administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient diagnosed with one or more adverse cardiac that has elevated FGF-23 levels (*e.g.*, intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments); and (c) monitoring the CKD patient for one, two, or all of the following: (i) one or more iron storage parameters, (ii) FGF-23 levels (*e.g.*, intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments), and/or (iii) phosphate levels. In a 30 specific embodiment, the method of treatment of one or more adverse cardiac events reduces the number symptoms associated with the one or more adverse cardiac events and/or prevents onset

of one or more symptoms associated with the one or more adverse cardiac events. In one embodiment, in accordance with the methods disclosed in this paragraph, the dose of ferric citrate administered to the patient per day may be: (i) reduced or maintained if the FGF-23 levels (e.g., intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments) are reduced in the CKD patient, or (ii) increased if the FGF-23 levels (e.g., intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments) have not been reduced in the CKD patient. In another embodiment, in accordance with the methods disclosed in this paragraph, the dose of ferric citrate administered to the patient may be: (i) reduced if one, two or more of the iron storage parameters (e.g., hemoglobin concentration, serum ferritin levels, and/or transferrin saturation) exceed levels within the normal range for non-CKD patients (e.g., healthy humans), (ii) reduced if FGF-23 levels (e.g., intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments) are reduced in the CKD patient and one, two or more of the iron storage parameters (e.g., hemoglobin, serum ferritin, and/or transferrin saturation) exceed levels within the normal range for non-CKD patients (e.g., healthy humans); and (iii) increased if the FGF-23 levels (e.g., intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments) in the CKD patient are still elevated relative to the normal healthy human range of FGF-23 levels (e.g., intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments), or the FGF-23 levels (e.g., intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments) in the CKD patient have not been reduced by at least 15%, 20%, or 30%; or (iv) increased if one, two or more of the iron storage parameters (e.g., hemoglobin concentration, serum ferritin levels, and/or transferrin saturation) do not exceed levels within the normal range for non-CKD patients (e.g., healthy humans) and the FGF-23 levels (e.g., intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments) in the CKD patient are still elevated relative to the normal healthy human range of FGF-23 levels (e.g., intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments) or the FGF-23 levels (e.g., intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments) in the CKD patient have not been reduced by at least 15%, 20%, or 30%. In certain embodiments, in accordance with the methods disclosed in this paragraph, the CKD patient is also monitored for the progression of one or more adverse cardiac events. In one embodiment, the adverse cardiac event is heart failure. In another embodiment, the adverse cardiac event is a ventricular arrhythmia. In another embodiment, the adverse cardiac event is a myocardial infarction (MI). In another embodiment, the adverse event is decreased left ventricular (LV) ejection fraction. In another embodiment, the adverse event is a sudden cardiac death. In another embodiment, the adverse event is a aortic root dilation. In another embodiment, the adverse event is a

cerebrovascular event (stroke). In a specific embodiment, the adverse event is left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH).

In certain embodiments, provided herein are methods preventing one or more adverse cardiac events in a CKD patient, or preventing the onset of one or more symptoms associated with one or more adverse cardiac events in a CKD patient, comprising: (a) assessing a CKD patient for FGF-23 levels (*e.g.*, intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments); (b) administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient with elevated FGF-23 levels (*e.g.*, intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments); and (c) monitoring the CKD patient for one, two, or all of the following: (i) one or more iron storage parameters, (ii) FGF-23 levels (*e.g.*, intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments), and/or (iii) serum phosphorus levels. In a specific embodiment, the method of treatment of one or more adverse cardiac events reduces the number of symptoms associated with the one or more adverse cardiac events and/or prevents onset of one or more symptoms associated with the one or more adverse cardiac events. In certain embodiments, the intact FGF-23 levels in the serum or plasma of the CKD patient are 50 pg/mL, 75 pg/mL, 100 pg/mL, 125 pg/mL, 150 pg/mL, 175 pg/mL, 200 pg/mL, 250 pg/mL, 300 pg/mL, 325 pg/mL or 350 pg/mL. In some embodiments, the intact FGF-23 levels in the serum or plasma of the CKD patient are between 50 pg/mL to 100 pg/mL, 100 pg/mL to 200 pg/mL, 200 pg/mL to 300 pg/mL, 150 pg/mL to 250 pg/mL, 250 pg/mL to 350 pg/mL, or 300 pg/mL to 375 pg/mL. In certain embodiments, the C-terminal FGF-23 fragment levels in the serum or plasma of the CKD patient are 60 RU/mL, 75 RU/mL, 100 RUg/mL, 125 RU/mL, 150 RU/mL, 175 RU/mL, 200 RU/mL, 250 RU/mL, 300 RU/mL, 325 RU/mL or 350 RU/mL. In some embodiments, the C-terminal FGF-23 fragment levels in the serum or plasma of the CKD patient are between 60 to 100 RU/mL, 100 RU/mL to 200 RU/mL, 200 RU/mL to 300 RU/mL, 150 to 250 RU/mL, 250 RU/mL to 350 RU/mL, or 300 RU/mL to 375 RU/mL. In one embodiment, in accordance with the methods disclosed in this paragraph, the dose of ferric citrate administered to the patient per day may be: (i) reduced or maintained if the FGF-23 levels (*e.g.*, intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments) are reduced in the CKD patient, or (ii) increased if the FGF-23 levels (*e.g.*, intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments) have not been reduced in the CKD patient. In another embodiment, in accordance with the methods disclosed in this paragraph, the dose of ferric citrate administered to the patient may be: (i) reduced if one, two or more of the iron storage parameters (*e.g.*, hemoglobin concentration, serum ferritin levels,

and/or transferrin saturation) exceed levels within the normal range for non-CKD patients (e.g., healthy humans), (ii) reduced if FGF-23 levels (e.g., intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments) are reduced in the CKD patient and one, two or more of the iron storage parameters (e.g., hemoglobin, serum ferritin, and/or transferrin saturation) exceed levels within the normal range for non-CKD patients (e.g., healthy humans); and (iii) increased if the FGF-23 levels (e.g., intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments) in the CKD patient are still elevated relative to the normal healthy human range of FGF-23 levels (e.g., intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments), or the FGF-23 levels (e.g., intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments) in the CKD patient have not been reduced by at least 15%, 20%, or 30%; or (iv) increased if one, two or more of the iron storage parameters (e.g., hemoglobin concentration, serum ferritin levels, and/or transferrin saturation) do not exceed levels within the normal range for non-CKD patients (e.g., healthy humans) and the FGF-23 levels (e.g., intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments) in the CKD patient are still elevated relative to the normal healthy human range of FGF-23 levels (e.g., intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments), or the FGF-23 levels (e.g., intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments) in the CKD patient have not been reduced by at least 15%, 20%, or 30%. In certain embodiments, in accordance with the methods disclosed in this paragraph, the CKD patient is also monitored for one or more adverse cardiac events. In one embodiment, the adverse cardiac event is heart failure. In another embodiment, the adverse cardiac event is a ventricular arrhythmia. In another embodiment, the adverse cardiac event is a myocardial infarction (MI). In another embodiment, the adverse event is decreased left ventricular (LV) ejection fraction. In another embodiment, the adverse event is a sudden cardiac death. In another embodiment, the adverse event is a aortic root dilation. In another embodiment, the adverse event is a cerebrovascular event (stroke). In a specific embodiment, the adverse event is left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH).

25 In certain embodiments, the CKD patient treated in accordance with the methods described herein for one or more adverse cardiac events has serum phosphate levels within the normal range for non-CKD patients (e.g., healthy humans). In other embodiments, the CKD patient treated in accordance with the methods described herein for one or more adverse cardiac events has elevated serum phosphate levels. In certain embodiments, the CKD patient treated in accordance with the methods described herein for one or more adverse cardiac events has serum phosphate levels about 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, or more above the levels of

serum phosphate found in non-CKD patients (e.g., healthy humans). In specific embodiments, the CKD patient treated in accordance with the methods described herein for one or more adverse cardiac events has elevated FGF-23 levels. In some embodiments, the CKD patient treated in accordance with the methods described herein for one or more adverse cardiac events

5 has serum phosphate levels within the normal range for non-CKD patients (e.g., healthy humans) and elevated FGF-23 levels (e.g., intact FGF-23 levels and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragment levels). The normal level of intact FGF-23 in the serum of healthy humans is approximately 26.1 pg/mL and the normal level of C-terminal FGF-23 fragments in the serum of healthy humans is approximately 49.0 RU/mL. In certain embodiments, the CKD patient's FGF-23 levels (e.g.,

10 intact FGF-23 and/or C-terminal FGF-23 fragments) are elevated relative to the normal range in healthy humans. In some embodiments, the CKD patient's intact FGF-23 levels in serum are between 250 pg/mL and 350 pg/mL, 200 pg/mL and 300 pg/mL, 200 pg/mL and 350 pg/mL, 300 pg/mL and 350 pg/mL, 300 pg/mL and 400 pg/mL, or 250 pg/mL and 500 pg/mL. In certain embodiments, the CKD patient's intact FGF-23 levels in serum are above 200 pg/mL, 225

15 pg/mL, 250 pg/mL, 275 pg/mL, 300 pg/mL, 325 pg/mL, or 350 pg/mL. In some embodiments, the CKD patient's C-terminal FGF-23 fragment levels in serum are between 60 RU/mL and 100 RU/mL, 100 RU/mL and 200 RU/mL, 200 RU/mL and 300 RU/mL, or 250 RU/mL and 400 RU/mL. In certain embodiments, the CKD patient's C-terminal FGF-23 fragment levels in serum are above 60 RU/mL, 100 RU/mL, 125 RU/mL, 150 RU/mL, 175 RU/mL, 200 RU/mL,

20 225 RU/mL, 250 RU/mL, 275 RU/mL, or 300 RU/mL.

In some embodiments, the CKD patient treated in accordance with the methods described herein for one or more adverse cardiac events is not receiving intravenous iron. In other embodiments, the CKD patient treated in accordance with the methods described herein is receiving intravenous iron. In certain embodiments, the amount of intravenous iron a CKD patient is receiving is reduced by at least 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, 25 50%, 55%, 60%, 65%, 70%, 75%, 80%, 85%, 90%, 95% or more following administration of the ferric citrate. In some embodiments, the CKD patient treated in accordance with the methods described herein for one or more adverse cardiac events is not receiving EPO. In other embodiments, the CKD patient treated in accordance with the methods described herein for one 30 or more adverse cardiac events is not receiving is receiving EPO. In certain embodiments, the amount of EPO a CKD patient is receiving is reduced by at least 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%,

30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, 50%, 55%, 60%, 65%, 70%, 75%, 80%, 85%, 90%, 95% or more following administration of the ferric citrate.

In some embodiments, CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience an increase in hemoglobin concentration and/or a decrease in FGF23. In specific 5 embodiments, CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience an increase in the hemoglobin level of the subject to a level above 10 g/dL, above 11 g/dL, above 12 g/dL, above 13 g/dL, or above 15 g/dL. In certain embodiments, CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience an increase in the hemoglobin level of the subject to a level between 10 g/dL to 11 g/dL, 11 g/dL to 12 g/dL, 10 g/dL to 13 g/dL, 11 g/dL to 10 13 g/dL, 11 g/dL to 15 g/dL, or 12 g/dL to 15 g/dL. In some embodiments, CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience a decrease of at least 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, 50%, 55%, or 60% of intact FGF-23 levels in serum or plasma. In certain 15 embodiments, CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience a decrease of 15% to 30%, 20% to 30%, 25% to 50%, 30% to 60% or 15% to 60% of intact FGF-23 levels in serum or plasma. In some embodiments, CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience a decrease of at least 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, 50%, 55%, or 60% of C-terminal FGF-23 fragment levels in serum or plasma. In some 20 embodiments, CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience a decrease of 15% to 30%, 20% to 30%, 25% to 50%, 30% to 60% or 15% to 60% of C-terminal FGF-23 fragment levels in serum or plasma.

In certain embodiments, the CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience a decrease in serum phosphorus levels. In some embodiments, CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience a decrease of at least 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, 50%, 55%, or 60% in serum phosphorus levels. In some 25 embodiments, CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience a decrease of 15% to 30%, 20% to 30%, 25% to 50%, 30% to 60% or 15% to 60% in serum phosphorus levels. In certain embodiments, CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience an increase in one or more iron storage parameters, such as serum ferritin levels, TSAT values and/or hemoglobin concentration. In some embodiments, CKD 30 patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience an increase of at least 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, 50%, 55%, or 60% in one or more iron storage parameters,

such as serum ferritin levels, TSAT values and/or hemoglobin concentration. In some embodiments, CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience an increase of 15% to 30%, 20% to 30%, 25% to 50%, 30% to 60% or 15% to 60% in one or more iron storage parameters, such as serum ferritin levels, TSAT values and/or hemoglobin concentration. In specific embodiments, CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience an improvement one or more cardiac functions. In certain embodiments, CKD patients treated according to the methods disclosed herein experience a reduction in the number of symptoms associated with one or more adverse cardiac events and/or a reduction in the onset of one or more symptoms associated with one or more adverse cardiac events.

In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides methods of reducing mortality and morbidity related to adverse cardiac events in subjects with chronic kidney disease, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient, *e.g.*, an ESRD patient or ND-CKD patient. In certain embodiments, the disclosure relates to a method of reducing incidence or risk of adverse cardiac events in subjects with chronic kidney disease, comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a chronic kidney disease patient in an amount ranging from 1 g to 18 g, 6 g to 12 g, or 3 g to 12g. In other embodiments, the disclosure relates to a method of reducing incidence or risk of hospitalizations related to adverse cardiac events in subjects with chronic kidney disease, comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a chronic kidney disease patient in an amount ranging from 1 g to 18 g, 6 g to 12 g, or 3 g to 12g. Yet other embodiments relate to a method of reducing incidence or risk of sudden cardiac death in subjects with chronic kidney disease, comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a chronic kidney disease patient in an amount ranging from 1 g to 18 g, 6 g to 12 g, or 3 g to 12g. Yet other embodiments relate to a method of treating left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH) in subjects with chronic kidney disease, comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a chronic kidney disease patient in an amount ranging from 1 g to 18 g, 6 g to 12 g, or 3 g to 12g.

In some embodiments, the methods comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a CKD patient at a dose of ferric iron ranging from 210 mg – 2,520 mg. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered for a period of 12 weeks, in some embodiments for a period of 24 weeks, in some embodiments for a period of 36 weeks, in some embodiments for a period of 48 weeks, and in some embodiments for a period of 52 weeks.

Again, in some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered in a 1 gram tablet dosage form, each dosage form comprising 210 mg of ferric iron. In some embodiments, the patient is administered up to 18 tablet dosage forms per day. In certain embodiments, the patient is administered 3 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the patient is administered 6 tablet dosage forms per day. In certain embodiments, the patient is administered 3 to 12 tablet dosage forms per day. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered within 1 hour of the ingestion of a meal or snack by the patient. In some embodiments, the patient was treated with thrice-weekly hemodialysis or with peritoneal dialysis for at least 3 months prior to administration of the ferric citrate. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate has a BET active surface area greater than about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 16 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 20 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area ranges from about 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g to about 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the BET active surface area is selected from 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g, 28.87 m<sup>2</sup>/g and 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate has an intrinsic dissolution rate of 1.88 – 4.0 mg/cm<sup>2</sup>/min.

15

### **Oral Iron Supplement**

In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides an oral iron supplement comprising ferric citrate in an amount effective to increase iron absorption in CKD patients. In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides an oral iron supplement comprising ferric citrate in an amount effective to maintain iron stores in CKD patients. In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides an oral iron supplement comprising ferric citrate in an amount effective to improve one or more iron storage parameters in CKD patients. In some embodiments, the one or more iron storage parameters are selected from hematocrit, hemoglobin concentration (Hb), total iron-binding capacity (TIBC), transferrin saturation (TSAT), serum iron levels, liver iron levels, spleen iron levels, and serum ferritin levels. In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides an oral iron supplement comprising ferric citrate in an amount effective to treat iron deficiency in CKD patients. In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides an oral iron supplement comprising ferric citrate in an amount effective to treat anemia in CKD patients.

30 In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides an oral iron supplement comprising ferric citrate having a dose of ferric iron of 210 mg. In some embodiments, the oral

iron supplements comprising ferric citrate can be administered so that the dose of ferric iron ranges from 210 mg – 2,520 mg.

In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides ferric citrate for use in the manufacture of an oral iron supplement to increase iron absorption in CKD patients. In some 5 embodiments, the present disclosure provides ferric citrate for use in the manufacture of an oral iron supplement to maintain iron stores in CKD patients. In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides ferric citrate for use in the manufacture of an oral iron supplement to improve one or more iron storage parameters in CKD patients. In some embodiments, the one or 10 more iron storage parameters are selected from hematocrit, hemoglobin concentration (Hb), total iron-binding capacity (TIBC), transferrin saturation (TSAT), serum iron levels, liver iron levels, spleen iron levels, and serum ferritin levels. In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides ferric citrate for use in the manufacture of an oral iron supplement to treat iron deficiency in CKD patients. In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides ferric citrate for use in the manufacture of an oral iron supplement to treat anemia in CKD patients.

15 In some embodiments, the present disclosure provides ferric citrate for use in the manufacture of an oral iron supplement comprising a dose of ferric iron of 210 mg.

### **Ferric Citrate**

In various aspects, the present disclosure relates to the use of ferric citrate to reduce 20 and/or control serum phosphorus levels, increase serum bicarbonate levels, improve one or more iron storage parameters (e.g., increase serum ferritin levels, increase transferrin saturation (TSAT), increase hemoglobin concentration) increase iron absorption, maintain iron stores, treat iron deficiency, treat anemia, reduce the need for IV iron and/or reduce the need for erythropoiesis-stimulating agents (ESAs) in CKD patients. In various aspects, the present 25 disclosure relates to the use of pharmaceutical compositions comprising ferric citrate and a pharmaceutically acceptable binder to reduce and/or control serum phosphorus levels, increase serum bicarbonate levels, improve one or more iron storage parameters (e.g., increase serum ferritin levels, increase transferrin saturation (TSAT), increase hemoglobin concentration) increase iron absorption, maintain iron stores, treat iron deficiency, treat anemia, reduce the need 30 for IV iron and/or reduce the need for erythropoiesis-stimulating agents (ESAs) in CKD patients. In certain aspects, the present disclosure relates to the use of pharmaceutical compositions

comprising ferric citrate and a pharmaceutically acceptable binder to treat one or more adverse cardiac events, LVH, left ventricular dysfunction, and/or heart failure.

Therefore, disclosed herein are preparations of ferric citrate and pharmaceutical compositions comprising the ferric citrate. In various embodiments, the ferric citrate 5 preparations, and the pharmaceutical compositions comprising the ferric citrate preparations, meet certain dissolution, tableting and disintegration standards. In various aspects, the pharmaceutical compositions can include ferric citrate as the active ingredient and a binder. The pharmaceutical compositions also can include a lubricant and/or a disintegrant (which, in some embodiments, can be the same as the binder).

10 Certain embodiments of the ferric citrate preparations disclosed for use herein are also disclosed in U.S. Patent Nos. 7,767,851, 8,093,423, 8,299,298, 8,338,642, 8,754,258, 8,846,976, and 8,754,257, and PCT Publication Nos. WO 2004/074444, WO 2007/022435, WO 2007/089571, WO 2007/089577 and WO 2011/011541. Certain embodiments of the ferric citrate preparations, however, are unique to this disclosure. The ferric citrate preparations 15 disclosed herein display an enhanced BET active surface area compared to commercially available or chemical grade forms of ferric citrate. BET theory explains the physical adsorption of gas molecules onto a solid surface. The theory serves as the basis for the measurement of the specific surface area of a material. This theory allows the calculation of surface areas of materials in a very accurate manner and is thus capable of distinguishing differences between 20 separate preparations of what would otherwise appear to be the same material. For example, activated carbon is a form of carbon that has been processed to make it extremely porous and thus to have a very large surface area. Activated carbon has been experimentally determined, using calculations derived from BET theory, to have a surface area of around  $3000\text{ m}^2\text{ g}^{-1}$ . This surface area is significantly higher than the active surface areas of other preparations of carbon 25 even though they are made of the same material.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein have a BET active surface area exceeding  $16\text{ m}^2/\text{g}$ . In some embodiments, the high purity ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein have a BET active surface area exceeding  $20\text{ m}^2/\text{g}$ . In some embodiments, the high purity ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein have a BET active surface area exceeding 30  $25\text{ m}^2/\text{g}$ . In some embodiments, the high purity ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein have a BET active surface area exceeding  $30\text{ m}^2/\text{g}$ . In some embodiments, the high purity ferric citrate

preparations disclosed herein have a BET active surface area exceeding 35 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the high purity ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein have a BET active surface area exceeding 40 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the high purity ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein have a BET active surface area exceeding 45 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the 5 high purity ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein have a BET active surface area exceeding 50 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In specific embodiments, the high purity ferric citrate preparations have less than 6%, less than 5%, less than 4%, less than 3% or less than 2% by weight of an impurity, such as beta-iron hydroxide oxide.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein have a BET active 10 surface area ranging from 16.17 m<sup>2</sup>/g to 19.85 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein have a BET active surface area selected from 16.17 m<sup>2</sup>/g and 19.85 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein have a BET active surface area exceeding 27 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein have a BET active surface area ranging from 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g to 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some 15 embodiments, the ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein have a BET active surface area ranging from 28.5 m<sup>2</sup>/g to 31.5 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein have a BET active surface area selected from 27.99 m<sup>2</sup>/g, 28.87 m<sup>2</sup>/g and 32.34 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein have a BET active surface area selected from 28.5 m<sup>2</sup>/g, 29.1 m<sup>2</sup>/g, 30.6 m<sup>2</sup>/g and 31.5 m<sup>2</sup>/g. In some embodiments, 20 the ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein have a BET active surface area from 30 m<sup>2</sup>/g to 40 m<sup>2</sup>/g. This is in sharp contrast to other preparations of ferric citrate such as chemical-grade preparations that are known and commercially available as of the filing date of this disclosure. Commercial grade preparations of ferric citrate have BET active surface areas that are substantially lower than the ferric citrate preparation of the present disclosure. Therefore, the ferric citrate 25 preparations disclosed herein have a significantly larger surface area available for adsorption or chemical reactions, making the preparations of ferric citrate disclosed herein substantially more reactive than commercial preparations.

The BET active surface areas determined for five ferric citrate preparations produced by the methods disclosed in PCT Publication No. WO2004/074444 have been determined. Those 30 BET active surface areas are displayed in Table 1, below, compared to the BET active surface area of commercial-grade preparations of ferric citrate:

**Table 1. BET active surface areas of various forms of ferric citrate**

Sample	Mean Dissolution Rates (mg/cm <sup>2</sup> /min)	BET Active Surface Area
RFS-12-1 (sigma / commercially available)	0.76	0.61
RFS-12-2 (sigma / commercially available)		
STM-134-1 (reference material 1)	2.47	16.17
STM-134-2 (reference material 2)		
STM-182-1 (lab-scale 500 g batch 1)	2.61	19.85
STM-182-2 (lab-scale 500 g batch 2)		

The BET active surface areas determined for five ferric citrate preparations produced by the methods disclosed in PCT Publication No. WO2011/011541 have been determined. Those  
5 BET active surface areas are displayed in Table 2, below, compared to the BET active surface area of commercial-grade preparations of ferric citrate:

**Table 2. BET active surface areas**

Sample	BET Active Surface Area (m <sup>2</sup> /g)
RFS-12-1 (sigma / commercially available)	0.61
RFS-12-2 (sigma / commercially available)	
Sample #10-1 (Pre-granulation(API+ProSolv)) <sup>1</sup>	27.99
Sample #10-2 (Pre-granulation(API+ProSolv)) <sup>2</sup>	32.34
Sample #11-1 (Pre-granulation(API+ProSolv)) <sup>3</sup>	
Sample #11-2 (Pre-granulation(API+ProSolv)) <sup>4</sup>	28.87
Sample #11-3 (Pre-granulation(API+ProSolv)) <sup>5</sup>	

The BET active surface areas for four additional ferric citrate preparations produced by  
10 methods disclosed herein have also been determined. Those BET active surface areas are displayed in Table 3, below, compared to the BET active surface area of commercial-grade preparations of ferric citrate:

<sup>1</sup> From Example 10 of PCT Publication No. WO 2011/011541.

<sup>2</sup> From Example 10 of PCT Publication No. WO 2011/011541.

<sup>3</sup> From Example 11 of PCT Publication No. WO 2011/011541.

<sup>4</sup> From Example 11 of PCT Publication No. WO 2011/011541.

<sup>5</sup> From Example 11 of PCT Publication No. WO 2011/011541.

**Table 3. BET active surface areas**

Sample	BET Active Surface Area (m <sup>2</sup> /g)
RFS-12-1 (sigma / commercially available)	0.61
RFS-12-2 (sigma / commercially available)	
Batch No. 35102	30.6
Batch No. 35103	29.1
Batch No. 35105	31.5
Batch No. 35106	28.5

The BET active surface areas of the embodiments of ferric citrate preparations disclosed in Tables 1, 2 and 3 are thus significantly higher than those of commercial grade ferric citrate.

5 Table 4 illustrates the assay content of ferric iron of the ferric citrate disclosed herein. The assay content of ferric iron represents the amount of ferric iron in each of the preparations of ferric citrate shown in Table 4. In some embodiments, the assay content of ferric iron is greater than or exceeds about 20% w/w. In some embodiments, the assay content of ferric iron is 21.2% w/w. In some embodiments, the assay content of ferric iron is 22.1% w/w. In some 10 embodiments, the assay content of ferric iron is 22.4% w/w. In some embodiments, the assay content of ferric iron is between 21% w/w and 23% w/w.

**Table 4: Ferric Iron Content**

Batch	Material balance	+ Water	Revised Mat Bal. (mat bal+water)	Impurity Content	% Fe(III)
A	94.60	1.9	96.50	3.5	21.2
B	94.40	2.1	96.50	3.5	21.2
C	93.40	2.0	95.40	4.6	22.4
D	92.90	2.2	95.10	4.9	22.1

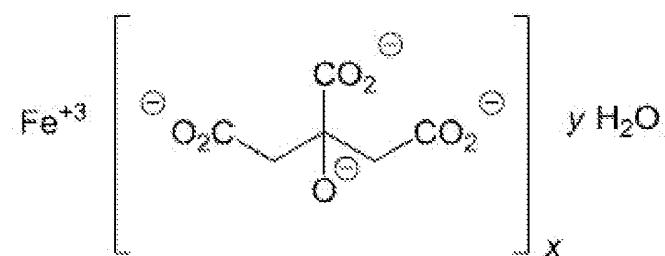
15 The ferric citrate disclosed herein is a complex of iron(III) and citric acid. In specific aspects, the complex of iron (III) and citric acid comprises water. In some aspects, the molar ratio of iron (III) to citric acid is from 1: 0.70 to 1: 0.78. In some aspects, the molar ratio of iron (III) to citric acid is from 1: 0.69 to 1: 0.87. In some aspects, the molar ratio of iron (III) to citric acid is from 1: 0.75 to 1: 1.10. In some aspects, the molar ratio of iron (III) to citric acid is from 1: 0.78 to 1: 0.95. In some aspects, the molar ratio of iron (III) to citric acid is from 1: 0.80 to 1: 20 0.92. In some aspects, the molar ratio of iron (III) to citric acid is from 1: 0.81 to 1: 0.91. In some

aspects, the molar ratio of iron (III) to citric acid is from 1: 0.75 to 1: 1.15. In some aspects, the molar ratio of iron (III) to citric acid is from 1: 0.80 to 1: 1.10.

In some aspects, the molar ratio of iron (III) to water is from 1: 0.32 to 1: 0.42. In some aspects, the molar ratio of iron (III) to water is from 1: 0.32 to 1: 0.46. In some aspects, the molar ratio of iron (III) to water is from 1: 1.8 to 1: 3.2. In some aspects, the molar ratio of iron (III) to water is from 1: 1.8 to 1: 3.2. In some aspects, the molar ratio of iron (III) to water is from 1: 2.4 to 1: 3.1. In some aspects, the molar ratio of iron (III) to water is from 1: 2.7 to 1: 3.1.

In a specific embodiment, the ferric citrate disclosed herein is known chemically as iron (+3),  $x$  (1, 2, 3-propanetricarboxylic acid, 2-hydroxy-),  $y$  ( $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ )

10



$$x=0.70-0.87, y=1.9-3.3$$

In specific embodiments, the ferric citrate disclosed herein is tetraferric tricitrate decahydrate.

15 In specific embodiments, the ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein are substantially free of impurities, such as beta-iron hydroxide oxide. In particular embodiments, the ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein contain less than 6% of impurities, such as beta-iron hydroxide oxide, by weight based on the total weight of the ferric citrate preparation. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein contain less than 5% of impurities, such as beta-iron hydroxide oxide, by weight based on the total weight of the ferric citrate preparation. In certain embodiments, the ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein contain less than 4% of impurities, such as beta-iron hydroxide oxide, by weight based on the total weight of the ferric citrate preparation. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein contain less than 3% of impurities, such as beta-iron hydroxide oxide, by weight based on the total weight of the ferric citrate preparation.

20

25

The ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein are more soluble compared to commercially available or chemical grade forms of ferric citrate. In dissolution testing, the

percentage of ferric citrate of the present disclosure dissolved within 5 minutes is 91% or more, within 15 minutes is 96% or more, within 30 minutes is 96% or more and within 60 minutes is 95% or more in dissolution testing conducted on the ferric citrate preparations in USP <711> vessels using Apparatus II. Table 5 illustrates dissolution testing data for four exemplary batches 5 of ferric citrate according to the present disclosure. The particular standard used for the dissolution testing establishes a baseline of 100 so to the extent that a batch may have a dissolution greater than 100%, it is a dissolution rate relative to that standard.

**Table 5. Dissolution testing data**

Batch	5 minutes	15 minutes	30 minutes	60 minutes
A	101%	102%	101%	101%
B	101%	102%	102%	102%
C	97%	97%	97%	97%
D	91%	96%	96%	95%

10 Thus, in some embodiments, the percentage of ferric citrate dissolved within 15 minutes is 80% or more in dissolution testing conducted in USP <711> vessels using Apparatus II. In some embodiments, the percentage of ferric citrate dissolved within 15 minutes is 85% or more in dissolution testing conducted in USP <711> vessels using Apparatus II. In some 15 embodiments, the percentage of ferric citrate dissolved within 15 minutes is 90% or more in dissolution testing conducted in USP <711> vessels using Apparatus II. In some embodiments, the percentage of ferric citrate dissolved within 15 minutes is 91% or more in dissolution testing conducted in USP <711> vessels using Apparatus II. In some embodiments, the percentage of ferric citrate dissolved within 15 minutes is 95% or more in dissolution testing conducted in USP <711> vessels using Apparatus II. In some embodiments, the percentage of ferric citrate dissolved within 15 minutes is 96% or more in dissolution testing conducted in USP <711> vessels using Apparatus II. In some 20 embodiments, the percentage of ferric citrate dissolved within 15 minutes is 97% or more in dissolution testing conducted in USP <711> vessels using Apparatus II. In some embodiments, the percentage of ferric citrate dissolved within 15 minutes is 98% or more in dissolution testing conducted in USP <711> vessels using Apparatus II. In some embodiments, the percentage of ferric citrate dissolved within 15 minutes is 100% or more in dissolution testing conducted in USP <711> vessels using Apparatus II.

25 The ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein are more soluble compared to commercially available or chemical grade forms of ferric citrate. This increase in solubility of the ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein is believed to be a result of the unique, significantly large active surface area of the ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein. The

intrinsic dissolution rate is defined as the dissolution rate of pure substances under the condition of constant surface area. The intrinsic dissolution rate and bioavailability of a drug substance is influenced by its solid state properties including: crystallinity, amorphism, polymorphism, hydration, solvation, particle size and particle surface area. The measured intrinsic dissolution rate is dependent on these solid-state properties and is typically determined by exposing a constant surface area of a material to an appropriate dissolution medium while maintaining constant temperature, stirring rate, and pH.

5 In some embodiments, the ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein have an intrinsic dissolution rate of between 1.88 mg/cm<sup>2</sup>/min to 4 mg/cm<sup>2</sup>/min. In some embodiments, the ferric 10 citrate preparations disclosed herein have an intrinsic dissolution rate of greater than 2.28 mg/cm<sup>2</sup>/min. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein have an intrinsic dissolution rate exceeding 2.28 mg/cm<sup>2</sup>/min. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein have an intrinsic dissolution rate of 2.99 mg/cm<sup>2</sup>/min. In some 15 embodiments, the ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein have an intrinsic dissolution rate ranging from 2.28 mg/cm<sup>2</sup>/min to 2.99 mg/cm<sup>2</sup>/min. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein have an intrinsic dissolution rate selected from 2.28 mg/cm<sup>2</sup>/min and 2.99 mg/cm<sup>2</sup>/min. This is in sharp contrast to other preparations of ferric citrate such as 20 chemical-grade preparations that are known and commercially available. Commercial grade preparations of ferric citrate have an intrinsic dissolution rate that is substantially lower than the ferric citrate preparation of the present disclosure. Therefore, the ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein have a significantly higher intrinsic dissolution rate, making the preparations of ferric citrate disclosed herein substantially more soluble than commercial preparations.

25 The intrinsic dissolution rate was determined for a preparation of ferric citrate produced according to the present disclosure. The mean intrinsic dissolution rate is displayed in Table 6, below, compared to the dissolution rate of a commercial-grade preparation of ferric citrate:

**Table 6. Intrinsic Dissolution Rates**

Sample	Mean Intrinsic Dissolution Rates (mg/cm <sup>2</sup> /min)
RFS-12 (sigma/commercially available)	0.83
High Purity Ferric Citrate	2.64

The intrinsic dissolution rate of the ferric citrate preparation disclosed in Table 6 is thus significantly higher than that of commercial grade ferric citrate.

5

***Methods of Manufacture***

Exemplary methods of manufacture of preparations of ferric citrate provided by this disclosure are disclosed in U.S. Patent Nos. 7,767,851, 8,093,423, 8,299,298, 8,338,642, 8,754,258, 8,846,976, and 8,754,257, and PCT Publication Nos. WO 2004/074444, WO 10 2007/022435, WO 2007/089571, WO 2007/089577 and WO 2011/011541.

***Modes of Administration***

The ferric citrate disclosed herein may be advantageously used in human medicine. As disclosed herein, the ferric citrate disclosed herein is useful to reduce and/or control serum phosphorus levels, increase serum bicarbonate levels, improve one or more iron storage parameters (e.g., increase serum ferritin levels, increase transferrin saturation (TSAT), increase hemoglobin concentration) increase iron absorption, maintain iron stores, treat iron deficiency, treat anemia, reduce the need for IV iron and/or reduce the need for erythropoiesis-stimulating agents (ESAs) in CKD patients. The ferric citrate disclosed herein may also be advantageously used as an iron supplement. In various aspects, the ferric citrate disclosed herein can be administered orally. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered in an oral dosage form. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered in an oral tablet dosage form. In some embodiments, the tablet is in the form of a caplet.

When used to treat the above diseases and/or conditions, or when used as an iron supplement, the ferric citrate disclosed herein may be administered or applied singly, or in combination with other agents. The ferric citrate disclosed herein may also be administered or applied singly or in combination with other pharmaceutically active agents, including other

agents known to reduce and/or control serum phosphorus levels, increase serum bicarbonate levels, improve one or more iron storage parameters (e.g., increase serum ferritin levels, increase transferrin saturation (TSAT), increase hemoglobin concentration) increase iron absorption, maintain iron stores, treat iron deficiency, treat anemia, reduce the need for IV iron and/or reduce 5 the need for erythropoiesis-stimulating agents (ESAs) in CKD patients.

In addition, the ferric citrate may be administered in combination with pharmaceutically active agents known to treat adverse cardiac events, including high blood pressure. Suitable high blood pressure medications include, angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors, such as 10 captopril (Capoten), lisinopril (Prinivil, Zestril) and ramipril (Altace); angiotensin II receptor blockers, such as losartan (Cozaar), olmesartan (Benicar) and valsartan (Diovan); beta blockers, such as metoprolol (Lopressor, Toprol XL), nadolol (Corgard) and penbutolol (Levatol); calcium channel blockers, such as amlodipine (Norvasc), diltiazem (Cardizem, Dilacor XR) and nifedipine (Adalat, Procardia); renin inhibitors, such as Aliskiren (Tekturna); and diuretics, such 15 as thiazide.

15 The ferric citrate and the additional pharmaceutically active agent may be combined in any manner known in the art such as a unitary dosage form, or in separate dosage forms intended for simultaneous or sequential administration to a subject in need of treatment. When administered sequentially, the combination may be administered in two or more administrations. In an alternative embodiment, it is possible to administer one or more compounds of the present 20 invention and one or more additional active ingredients by different routes.

According to the methods of the invention, the combination of active ingredients may be: (1) co-formulated and administered or delivered simultaneously in a combined formulation; (2) delivered by alternation or in parallel as separate formulations; or (3) by any other combination 25 therapy regimen known in the art. When delivered in alternation therapy, the methods of the invention may comprise administering or delivering the active ingredients sequentially, e.g., in separate dosage forms. In general, during alternation therapy, an effective dosage of each active ingredient is administered sequentially, i.e., serially, whereas in simultaneous therapy, effective dosages of two or more active ingredients are administered together. Various sequences of intermittent combination therapy may also be used.

30 Methods of treatment are disclosed above and include orally administering ferric citrate to the patient at a dose of ferric iron ranging from 210 mg – 2,520 mg. The ferric citrate disclosed

herein can therefore be administered orally. In various aspects, the ferric citrate disclosed herein may be administered in an oral tablet dosage form that comprises 1 gram of ferric citrate and a dose of ferric iron of about 210 mg.

5 The ferric citrate disclosed herein serves to enhance the absorption of iron from the intestinal lumen and to enhance/maintain the storage of iron after absorption. It is believed that the enhanced absorption and storage of iron may be due to the presence of citrate in the ferric citrate administered to the CKD patient. While not wishing to be bound by any theory, some studies have shown that administration of iron in combination with citrate (the conjugate base of citric acid) serves to significantly increase (e.g., by several fold) the amount of iron absorbed 10 from dietary sources (see, e.g., Ballot, *et al.*, *Br. J. Nutr.* (1987) 57, 331–343; Gillooly, *et al.*, *Br. J. Nutr.* (1983) 49, 331–342; Zhang, *et al.*, *Eur. J. Nutr.* (2007) 46, 95–102; and Salovaara, *et al.*, *J. Agric. Food Chem.* (2002) 50, 6233–6238).

15 The ferric citrate disclosed herein can be administered in some embodiments once per day, in some embodiments twice per day, in some embodiments three times per day, and in some embodiments more than twice per day. In various aspects, the ferric citrate may be administered in the form of a daily dose that is split up during the course of a single day. By way of example, a single daily dose of ferric citrate may be 6 grams and that 6 grams may be spread out over the course of the day such that 2 grams is taken in the morning, 2 grams in the afternoon, and the final 2 grams in the evening, for a total of 6 grams over the course of a day.

20 The ferric citrate disclosed herein can be used to reduce and/or control serum phosphorus levels, increase serum bicarbonate levels, improve one or more iron storage parameters (e.g., increase serum ferritin levels, increase transferrin saturation (TSAT), increase hemoglobin concentration) increase iron absorption, maintain iron stores, treat iron deficiency, treat anemia, reduce the need for IV iron and/or reduce the need for erythropoiesis-stimulating agents (ESAs) 25 in CKD patients, while also reducing adverse drug effects associated with known forms of oral iron supplements (such as ferrous iron-containing supplements) and/or IV iron supplements.

## **Pharmaceutical Compositions and Iron Supplements**

Disclosed herein are ferric citrate-containing pharmaceutical compositions comprising 30 the ferric citrate preparations disclosed herein and a binder. In some embodiments, the pharmaceutical compositions can be provided to CKD patients as iron supplements. In some

embodiments, the pharmaceutical compositions can be provided to CKD patients as phosphate binders and/or to reduce and/or control serum phosphorus levels, increase serum bicarbonate levels, improve one or more iron storage parameters (e.g., increase serum ferritin levels, increase transferrin saturation (TSAT), increase hemoglobin concentration) increase iron absorption, 5 maintain iron stores, treat iron deficiency, treat anemia, reduce the need for IV iron and/or reduce the need for erythropoiesis-stimulating agents (ESAs) in CKD patients. In various embodiments, the pharmaceutical compositions meet certain dissolution, tableting and/or disintegration standards. In various aspects, the pharmaceutical compositions can include ferric citrate as the active ingredient and a binder. The pharmaceutical compositions also can include a lubricant 10 and/or a disintegrant (which, in some embodiments, can be the same as the binder). In some embodiments, the pharmaceutical compositions are oral tablet dosage forms.

Certain embodiments of the pharmaceutical compositions and oral tablet dosage forms provided by this disclosure are disclosed in PCT Publication No. WO 2011/011541. Other embodiments, however, are unique to this disclosure.

15

#### ***Oral Tablet Dosage Forms and Oral Iron Supplements***

In one aspect, the pharmaceutical compositions are tablets that include ferric citrate and a binder. As is used herein, a “tablet” is a material produced by compression force, such as with a tableting machine. In other embodiments the tablets can include ferric citrate, a binder, a 20 lubricant and a disintegrant. In some embodiments, a single tablet comprises 1 gram of ferric citrate having a 210 mg dose of ferric iron. In some embodiments, the tablets can be used to reduce and/or control serum phosphorus levels, increase serum bicarbonate levels, improve one or more iron storage parameters (e.g., increase serum ferritin levels, increase transferrin saturation (TSAT), increase hemoglobin concentration) increase iron absorption, maintain iron 25 stores, treat iron deficiency, treat anemia, reduce the need for IV iron and/or reduce the need for erythropoiesis-stimulating agents (ESAs) in CKD patients. In some embodiments, the tablets can be administered to CKD patients as oral iron supplements.

In some embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements can be characterized as highly drug loaded with the ferric citrate present in the tablets and/or oral iron supplements at 30 values of greater than approximately 65% by weight of the formulation, greater than approximately 70% by weight of the formulation, greater than approximately 75% by weight of

the formulation, greater than approximately 80% by weight of the formulation, greater than approximately 85% by weight of the formulation, greater than approximately 90% by weight of the formulation and as high as approximately 92% of the formulation. Intermediate values such as approximately 80% by weight ferric citrate, approximately 85% by weight ferric citrate and approximately 90% by weight ferric citrate also can be used in the ferric citrate tablets and/or oral iron supplements. In some embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements can be characterized as highly drug loaded with the ferric citrate present in the tablets and/or oral iron supplements at values of approximately 75% to approximately 92%, approximately 80% to approximately 92%, approximately 85% to approximately 92%, and approximately 90% to approximately 92%. The characteristics of the tablets and/or oral iron supplements produced at these highly loaded weight percentages are controlled by variables such as binder, binder amount, disintegrant, disintegrant amount, formulation method used (e.g., granulation, direct compression), tableting parameters, etc. Thus if a tablet and/or oral iron supplement is made and it has a slight amount of lamination or capping, by varying one or more of the above variables, the lamination or capping can be corrected.

In various embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements contains one or more components selected from among one or more binders, one or more lubricants, and one or more disintegrants.

The binder can be any binder known in the art. Without limitation, examples of the binder can include one or more of hydroxypropyl cellulose (HPC), hydroxypropylmethyl cellulose (HPMC), sodium alginate, alginic acid, guar gum, acacia gum, xanthan gum, carbolpol, cellulose gum (carboxy methyl cellulose), ethyl cellulose, maltodextrin, PVP/VA, povidone, microcrystalline cellulose, starch, partially or fully pregelatinized starch, and methyl cellulose. The maltodextrin, PVP/VA, and methyl cellulose function as immediate release binders when used in the ferric citrate tablets and/or oral iron supplements. In a specific embodiment, the binder used in a tablet and/or iron supplement comprises pregelatinized starch.

It also should be understood that combinations of binders can be used to control and vary the effect of the binder. For example, a binder system can be made up of hydroxypropyl cellulose and polyvinyl pyrrolidone (povidone) with or without microcrystalline cellulose. One or both of the hydroxypropyl cellulose and povidone can be replaced with pregelatinized starch.

In various aspects, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements can include a lubricant. As an example of a lubricant for the ferric citrate tablets and/or oral iron supplements, magnesium stearate, calcium stearate, sodium stearyl fumarate and combinations can be used. Other suitable lubricants include one or more of polyethylene glycol (molecular weight above 3350), sodium 5 lauryl sulfate, talc, mineral oil, leucine, and poloxamer.

In various aspects, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements can include a disintegrant. The disintegrant can be included in the tablets and/or oral iron supplements. The disintegrant can be the same as or different from the binder. By way of example and not limitation, microcrystalline cellulose has both binder and disintegrant properties and microcrystalline 10 cellulose can be used as the sole binder/disintegrant in the tablets and/or oral iron supplements. Examples of other suitable disintegrants include croscarmellose sodium, crospovidone, sodium starch glycolate, and starch.

The binder can be present in the tablets and/or oral iron supplements in an amount ranging from approximately 4.5% by weight to approximately 30% by weight. In certain 15 embodiments, the binder is present in the tablets and/or oral iron supplements in an amount ranging from approximately 5% by weight to approximately 15% by weight. In some embodiments, the binder is present in the tablets and/or oral iron supplements in an amount ranging from approximately 10% by weight to approximately 15% by weight. The disintegrant can be present in the tablets and/or oral iron supplements in an amount ranging from 20 approximately 1.5% by weight to approximately 15% by weight. In various embodiments, some non-starch disintegrants are often used at lower weight percents, e.g., as low as 0.25% and thus the disintegrant present in the tablets and/or oral iron supplements can be as low as 0.25% in some conditions.

The lubricant can be present in the tablets and/or oral iron supplements in an amount ranging from approximately 0.5% by weight to approximately 3% by weight. In certain 25 embodiments, the lubricant is present in the tablets and/or oral iron supplements in an amount ranging from approximately 0.5% by weight to 2% by weight. In some embodiments, the lubricant is present in the tablets and/or oral iron supplements in an amount ranging from approximately 0.5% by weight to approximately 1% by weight. It should be understood that 30 some components, such as microcrystalline cellulose, can function with both disintegrant and binder properties.

The weight of individual tablets and/or oral iron supplements can depend upon the final dosage to be produced; e.g. 125mg, 250mg, 500mg, 667mg, 750mg and 1,000mg of ferric citrate. In some embodiments, the tablets comprise 1 gram of ferric citrate and therefore a dose of 210 mg of ferric iron.

5 In various embodiments, tablets and/or oral iron supplements are coated to a weight gain of approximately 2% to 5% using an Opadry suspension or equivalent in a perforated pan coater. Calcium stearate and Opadry purple can be replaced with or used with a different lubricant or coating system, respectively.

In other variations, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements have reduced water content.

10 In one embodiment, the water content of the tablet, as measured by LOD %, is less than 20%. In another embodiment, the water content of the tablet, as measured by LOD %, is less than 19%. In another embodiment, the water content of the tablet, as measured by LOD %, is less than 18%. In another embodiment, the water content of the tablet, as measured by LOD %, is less than 17%. In another embodiment, the water content of the tablet, as measured by LOD %, 15 is less than 16%. In another embodiment, the water content of the tablet, as measured by LOD %, is less than 15%. In another embodiment, the water content of the tablet, as measured by LOD %, is less than 14%. In another embodiment, the water content of the tablet, as measured by LOD %, is less than 13%. In another embodiment, the water content of the tablet, as measured by LOD % is less than 12%. In another embodiment, the water content as measured 20 by LOD % is less than 11%. In another embodiment, the water content as measured by LOD % is less than 10%. In another embodiment, the water content of the tablet, as measured by LOD %, is less than 9%. In another embodiment, the water content of the tablet, as measured by LOD %, is less than 8%. In another embodiment, the water content of the tablet, as measured by LOD %, is less than 7%. In another embodiment, the water content of the tablet, as measured by LOD %, 25 is less than 6%. In another embodiment, the water content of the tablet, as measured by LOD %, is less than 5%.

In certain embodiments, the water content of the tablet, as measured by LOD %, is between 10% and 15%. In some embodiments, the water content of the tablet, as measured by LOD %, is between 5% and 10%. In certain embodiments, the water content of the tablet, as 30 measured by LOD %, is between 5% and 14%. In some embodiments, the water content of the tablet, as measured by LOD %, is between 5% and 12%. In certain embodiments, the water

content of the tablet, as measured by LOD %, is between 10% and 14%. In some embodiments, the water content of the tablet, as measured by LOD %, is between 2% and 14%. In certain embodiments, the water content of the tablet, as measured by LOD %, is between 2% and 10%. In some embodiments, the water content of the tablet, as measured by LOD %, is between 2% 5 and 12%.

LOD (loss on drying) is a method of thermogravimetric moisture determination. In thermogravimetric processes, the moisture of a material includes substances that volatilize during warming, and therefore contribute to the material's loss of mass. Alongside water this may also include alcohol or decomposition products. When using thermogravimetric measurement 10 methods (drying using infrared, halogen, microwaves or ovens) no distinction is made between water and other volatile components.

In some embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements comprise an amount of ferric citrate selected from approximately 1000 mg, approximately 667 mg, approximately 500 mg, approximately 250 mg and approximately 125 mg. In some embodiments, the tablets and/or 15 oral iron supplements comprise 1 gram (1000mg) of ferric citrate. In some embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements comprise 1 gram of ferric citrate containing approximately 210 mg of ferric iron.

In some embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements comprise 1.3 grams of ferric citrate. In some embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements comprise 1.5 grams 20 of ferric citrate. In some embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements comprise 1.6 grams of ferric citrate. In some embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements comprise an amount of ferric citrate selected from 100mg, 125mg, 150mg, 175mg, 200mg, 225mg, 250mg, 275mg, 300mg, 325mg, 350mg, 375mg, 400mg, 425mg, 450mg, 475mg, 500mg, 525mg, 550mg, 575mg, 600mg, 625mg, 650mg, 675mg, 700mg, 725mg, 750mg, 775mg, 25 800mg, 825mg, 850mg, 875mg, 900mg, 925mg, 950mg, 975mg, 1000mg, 1025mg, 1050mg, 1075mg, 1100mg, 1125mg, 1150mg, 1175mg, 1200mg, 1225mg, 1250mg, 1275mg, 1300mg, 1325mg, 1350mg, 1375mg, 1400mg, 1425mg, 1450mg, 1475mg, 1500mg, 1525mg, 1550mg, 1575mg, 1600mg, 1625mg, 1650mg, 1675mg, 1700mg, 1725mg, 1750mg, 1775mg, 1800mg, 1825mg, 1850mg, 1875mg, 1900mg, 1925mg, 1950mg, 1975mg and 2000mg. In specific 30 embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements comprise approximately 1 g of ferric

citrate. In certain embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements comprise approximately 1000 mg to 1050 mg, 975 mg to 1050 mg, or 950 mg to 1050 mg of ferric citrate

In some embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements comprise between approximately 65 wt% and 92 wt% ferric citrate; between approximately 4.5 wt% and 30 wt% 5 binder; and between 0.5 wt% and 3 wt% lubricant. In certain embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements comprise between approximately 80 wt% and approximately 92 wt% ferric citrate; between approximately 5 wt% and approximately 15 wt% binder; and between approximately 0.5 wt% and approximately 2 wt% lubricant. In some embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements comprise between approximately 85 wt% and approximately 92 10 wt% ferric citrate; between approximately 5 wt% and approximately 15 wt% binder; and between approximately 0.5 wt% and approximately 1 wt% lubricant. In some embodiments, the lubricant is selected from one or more of magnesium stearate, calcium stearate, and sodium stearyl fumarate. In a specific embodiment, the lubricant is calcium stearate. In certain 15 embodiments, the binder is pregelatinized starch and the lubricant is calcium stearate.

15 In some embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements comprise 65 % by weight to 92 % by weight of ferric citrate and 4.5 % by weight to 30 % by weight of a binder, wherein the mean surface area to mass ratio of said tablet is equal to or greater than 1 m<sup>2</sup> per gram, and wherein the LOD % water of the tablet is less than 20% water w/w. In some embodiments, the mean surface area to mass ratio of the tablets and/or oral iron supplements can be equal to or 20 greater than 5 m<sup>2</sup> per gram. In some embodiments, the mean surface area to mass ratio of the tablets and/or oral iron supplements is equal to or greater than 10 m<sup>2</sup> per gram. In some embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements comprise at least 70 weight percent ferric citrate. In some embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements comprise at least 80 weight percent ferric citrate. In some embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements 25 comprise at least 90 weight percent ferric citrate. In some embodiments, the binder comprises one or more of hydroxypropyl cellulose (HPC), hydroxypropylmethyl cellulose (HPMC), sodium alginate, alginic acid, guar gum, acacia gum, xanthan gum, carbolpol, cellulose gum (carboxymethyl cellulose), ethyl cellulose, maltodextrin, PVP/VA, povidone, microcrystalline cellulose, starch (partially or fully pregelatinized starch) and methyl cellulose. In some 30 embodiments, the LOD % water of the tablets and/or oral iron supplements is less than 15% water w/w. In some embodiments, the LOD % water of the tablets and/or oral iron supplements

is less than 10% water w/w. In some embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements further comprise a disintegrant selected from one or more of microcrystalline cellulose, croscarmellose sodium, crospovidone, sodium starch glycolate, and starch. In some embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements further comprise a lubricant selected from 5 one or more of magnesium stearate, calcium stearate, and sodium stearyl fumarate. In some embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements comprise between 0.5% and 3% lubricant. In some embodiments, the binder comprises pregelatinized starch. In some embodiments, the lubricant comprises calcium stearate and sodium stearyl fumarate. In some embodiments, at least 80% of the ferric citrate in the tablets and/or oral iron supplements is dissolved in a time 10 less than or equal to 60 minutes as measured by test method USP <711>. In some embodiments, at least 80% of the ferric citrate in the tablets and/or oral iron supplements is dissolved in a time less than or equal to 45 minutes as measured by test method USP <711>. In some embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements comprise approximately 1000 mg of ferric citrate. In some embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements comprise approximately 667 mg of 15 ferric citrate. In some embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements comprise approximately 500 mg of ferric citrate.

In certain embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements comprise between approximately 80 wt% and approximately 92 wt% ferric citrate and between approximately 5 wt% and approximately 15 wt% binder, wherein the mean surface area to mass ratio of said 20 tablet is equal to or greater than 1 m<sup>2</sup> per gram, and wherein the LOD % water of the tablet is between 5% to 14%. In some embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements comprise between approximately 85 wt% and approximately 92 wt% ferric citrate and between approximately 5 wt% and approximately 15 wt% binder; wherein the mean surface area to mass ratio of said tablet is equal to or greater than 1 m<sup>2</sup> per gram, and wherein the LOD % water of the 25 tablet is between 5% to 14%. In some embodiments, the mean surface area to mass ratio of the tablets and/or oral iron supplements can be equal to or greater than 5 m<sup>2</sup> per gram. In some embodiments, the mean surface area to mass ratio of the tablets and/or oral iron supplements is equal to or greater than 10 m<sup>2</sup> per gram. In some embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements comprise between approximately 0.5% and approximately 3% lubricant. In certain 30 embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements comprise between approximately 0.5% and approximately 2% lubricant. In some embodiments, the binder comprises pregelatinized

starch. In some embodiments, the lubricant comprises calcium stearate. In some embodiments, at least 80% of the ferric citrate in the tablets and/or oral iron supplements is dissolved in a time less than or equal to 60 minutes as measured by test method USP <711>. In some embodiments, at least 80% of the ferric citrate in the tablets and/or oral iron supplements is dissolved in a time 5 less than or equal to 45 minutes as measured by test method USP <711>. In some embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements comprise approximately 1000 mg of ferric citrate.

In certain embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements comprise between approximately 80 wt% and approximately 92 wt% ferric citrate; between approximately 5 wt% and approximately 15 wt% binder; and between approximately 0.5 wt% and approximately 2 10 wt% lubricant, wherein at least 80% of the ferric citrate in the tablets and/or oral iron supplements is dissolved in a time less than or equal to 45 minutes, or less than or equal to 60 minutes as measured by test method USP <711>. In some embodiments, the tablets and/or oral iron supplements comprise between approximately 85 wt% and approximately 92 wt% ferric citrate; between approximately 5 wt% and approximately 15 wt% binder; and between 15 approximately 0.5 wt% and approximately 1 wt% lubricant, wherein at least 80% of the ferric citrate in the tablets and/or oral iron supplements is dissolved in a time less than or equal to 45 minutes, or less than or equal to 60 minutes as measured by test method USP <711>.

Table 7 provides a formulation for a ferric citrate tablet and/or oral iron supplement according to one embodiment of the present disclosure:

20

**Table 7. Formulation for a Ferric Citrate Tablet and/or Oral Iron Supplement**

Material Description	Theoretical kg/Batch	% w/w
Ferric Citrate	14.89	87.6
Pregelatinized Starch	1.70	10.0
Calcium Stearate	0.406	2.4
Purified Water	15.30*	N/A*
<b>Core Tablet Total</b>	<b>17.00</b>	<b>100.0</b>
Opadry Purple 03K100000	0.51	15.0
Purified Water	2.89*	85.0*
<b>Coated Tablet Total</b>	<b>17.5</b>	<b>100.0</b>

\* – Purified water is removed during a drying phase in the manufacturing process

Table 8 provides a formulation for a ferric citrate tablet and/or oral iron supplement 25 according to one embodiment of the present disclosure:

**Table 8:**

<b>Material Description</b>	<b>Target kg/Batch</b>	<b>Theoretical 100 kg/Lot</b>	<b>% w/w Individual</b>	<b>% w/w Coated Tablet</b>
Ferric Citrate	14.9	80.0 - 90.0	80.0 - 90.0	76.2 - 88.2
Pregelatinized Starch	1.7	8.0 - 15.0	8.0 - 15.0	7.6 - 14.7
Calcium Stearate (1)	0.4	1.0 - 3.0	1.0 - 3.0	0.9 - 2.9
OR - Sodium Stearyl Fumarate (1)	0.4	2.0 - 3.0	2.0 - 3.0	1.9 - 2.9
Purified Water	15.3*	72.0-135.0*	*	*
<b>Core Tablet Total</b>	<b>17. 0</b>	<b>100.0</b>	<b>100.0</b>	<b>N/A*</b>
Opadry Purple	0.9	5.3	15.0	2.0 - 5.0
Purified Water	5.1*	30.0*	85.0*	N/A*
<b>Coated Tablet Total</b>	<b>17.5 to 17.9</b>	<b>35.3</b>	<b>100.0</b>	<b>100.0</b>

(1) – use either calcium stearate or sodium stearyl fumarate as lubricant

\* – Purified water is removed

5 Table 9 provides a formulation for a ferric citrate tablet and/or oral iron supplement according to one embodiment of the present disclosure:

**Table 9:**

<b>Material Description</b>	<b>Target kg/Batch</b>	<b>% w/w Individual</b>
Ferric Citrate	14.89	87.6
Pregelatinized Starch	1.70	10.0
Calcium Stearate (1)	0.406	2.4
Purified Water	15.30	N/A
<b>Core Tablet Total</b>	<b>17. 00</b>	<b>100.0</b>
Opadry Purple	0.51	15.0
Purified Water	2.89	85.0
<b>Coated Tablet Total</b>	<b>17.5</b>	<b>100.0</b>

Table 10 provides a formulation for a ferric citrate tablet and/or oral iron supplement according to one embodiment of the present disclosure:

**Table 10:**

Material / Component	Formula Composition % w/w
Ferric Citrate	70.0 to 99.0
Starch	0.0 to 30.0
Microcrystalline Cellulose	0.0 to 30.0
Polyvinylpyrrolidone	0.0 to 30.0
Calcium Stearate	0.0 to 3.0
Sodium Stearyl Fumarate	0.0 to 3.0
Purified Water	N/A*
<b>Core Caplet Total</b>	100.0
Film coating	0.0 to 5.0
Purified Water	N/A*
<b>Coated Caplet Total</b>	100.0

\* The purified water is removed.

5 Table 11 provides a formulation for a ferric citrate tablet and/or oral iron supplement according to one embodiment of the present disclosure:

**Table 11:**

Material	Weight mg $\pm$ 10%
Ferric Citrate	1,500
Starch	150
Microcrystalline Cellulose	0
Polyvinylpyrrolidone	0
Calcium Stearate	16
Sodium Stearyl Fumarate	0
Purified Water	N/A*
<b>Core Caplet Total - mg</b>	1,666
Film coating	50
Purified Water	N/A*
<b>Coated Caplet Total - mg</b>	1,766

\* The purified water is removed.

10

### **Dosing**

The tablets and/or oral iron supplements disclosed herein can be made to accommodate a number of doses of ferric citrate. The weight of individual tablets and/or oral iron supplements can depend upon the final dosage to be produced; e.g., 125mg, 250mg, 500mg, 667mg, 750mg

and 1,000mg of ferric citrate per tablet. In various aspects, the ferric citrate is provided in a tablet dosage form comprising 1 gram of ferric citrate containing approximately 210 mg of ferric iron. The number of tablets and/or oral iron supplements administered can be adjusted to conform to the desired amount of ferric citrate to be administered. For example, if a CKD 5 patient is directed to take 4 grams of ferric citrate daily in a single dose, the CKD patient may take 4 tablets and/or oral iron supplements, each comprising 1 gram of ferric citrate, or may take 8 tablets and/or oral iron supplements, each comprising 500mg of ferric citrate.

In some embodiments, a daily dose of ferric citrate administered to CKD patients can be from 1 gram – 18 grams, at a dose of ferric iron ranging from 210 mg – 3,780 mg. In some 10 embodiments, one or more tablets comprising 1 gram of ferric citrate, each tablet having a dose of ferric iron of 210 mg, is/are administered to reduce and/or control serum phosphorus levels, increase serum bicarbonate levels, improve one or more iron storage parameters (e.g., increase serum ferritin levels, increase transferrin saturation (TSAT), increase hemoglobin concentration) increase iron absorption, maintain iron stores, treat iron deficiency, treat anemia, reduce the need 15 for IV iron and/or reduce the need for erythropoiesis-stimulating agents (ESAs) in CKD patients.

In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered at a daily dose of 1 tablet per day, the tablet comprising 1 gram of ferric citrate containing 210 mg of ferric iron, for a total daily dose of 1 gram of ferric citrate and 210 mg ferric iron. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered at a daily dose of 2 tablets per day, each tablet comprising 1 gram of ferric citrate 20 containing 210 mg of ferric iron, for a total daily dose of 2 grams of ferric citrate and 420 mg ferric iron. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered at a daily dose of 3 tablets per day, each tablet comprising 1 gram of ferric citrate containing 210 mg of ferric iron, for a total daily dose of 3 grams of ferric citrate and 630 mg ferric iron. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered at a daily dose of 4 tablets per day, each tablet comprising 1 gram of 25 ferric citrate containing 210 mg of ferric iron, for a total daily dose of 4 grams of ferric citrate and 840 mg ferric iron. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered at a daily dose of 5 tablets per day, each tablet comprising 1 gram of ferric citrate containing 210 mg of ferric iron, for a total daily dose of 5 grams of ferric citrate and 1,050 mg ferric iron. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered at a daily dose of 6 tablets per day, each tablet comprising 1 30 gram of ferric citrate containing 210 mg of ferric iron, for a total daily dose of 6 grams of ferric citrate and 1,260 mg ferric iron. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered at a

daily dose of 7 tablets per day, each tablet comprising 1 gram of ferric citrate containing 210 mg of ferric iron, for a total daily dose of 7 grams of ferric citrate and 1,470 mg ferric iron. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered at a daily dose of 8 tablets per day, each tablet comprising 1 gram of ferric citrate containing 210 mg of ferric iron, for a total daily dose of 8 grams of ferric citrate and 1,680 mg ferric iron. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered at a daily dose of 9 tablets per day, each tablet comprising 1 gram of ferric citrate containing 210 mg of ferric iron, for a total daily dose of 9 grams of ferric citrate and 1,890 mg ferric iron. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered at a daily dose of 10 tablets per day, each tablet comprising 1 gram of ferric citrate containing 210 mg of ferric iron, for a total daily dose of 10 grams of ferric citrate and 2,100 mg ferric iron. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered at a daily dose of 11 tablets per day, each tablet comprising 1 gram of ferric citrate containing 210 mg of ferric iron, for a total daily dose of 11 grams of ferric citrate and 2,310 mg ferric iron. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered at a daily dose of 12 tablets per day, each tablet comprising 1 gram of ferric citrate containing 210 mg of ferric iron, for a total daily dose of 12 grams of ferric citrate and 2,520 mg ferric iron. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered at a daily dose of 13 tablets per day, each tablet comprising 1 gram of ferric citrate containing 210 mg of ferric iron, for a total daily dose of 13 grams of ferric citrate and 2,730 mg ferric iron. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered at a daily dose of 14 tablets per day, each tablet comprising 1 gram of ferric citrate containing 210 mg of ferric iron, for a total daily dose of 14 grams of ferric citrate and 2,940 mg ferric iron. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered at a daily dose of 15 tablets per day, each tablet comprising 1 gram of ferric citrate containing 210 mg of ferric iron, for a total daily dose of 15 grams of ferric citrate and 3,150 mg ferric iron. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered at a daily dose of 16 tablets per day, each tablet comprising 1 gram of ferric citrate containing 210 mg of ferric iron, for a total daily dose of 16 grams of ferric citrate and 3,360 mg ferric iron. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered at a daily dose of 17 tablets per day, each tablet comprising 1 gram of ferric citrate containing 210 mg of ferric iron, for a total daily dose of 17 grams of ferric citrate and 3,570 mg ferric iron. In some embodiments, the ferric citrate is administered at a daily dose of 18 tablets per day, each tablet comprising 1 gram of ferric citrate containing 210 mg of ferric iron, for a total daily dose of 18 grams of ferric citrate and 3,780 mg ferric iron.

## EXAMPLES

The following example describes in detail the use of the ferric citrate disclosed herein. It will be apparent to those skilled in the art that many modifications, both to materials and 5 methods, may be practiced without departing from the scope of the disclosure.

### Example 1

#### **A Three-Period, 58-Week Trial Of Ferric Citrate As A Phosphate Binder In Patients With End-Stage Renal Disease (ESRD) On Dialysis**

10 The primary objectives of this trial were as follows:

1. To determine the long-term safety over 52 weeks of up to twelve (12) caplets/day of KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) in patients with end-stage renal disease undergoing either hemodialysis or peritoneal dialysis.
2. To determine the efficacy of KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) in a four-week, randomized, open-label, placebo-controlled Efficacy Assessment Period.

#### *Study Rationale*

Previous clinical trials have demonstrated the ability of ferric citrate to lower serum phosphorus levels in patients with ESRD who are on thrice-weekly hemodialysis. These trials used a maximum of approximately 12 g/day of ferric citrate for four weeks.

20 This clinical trial determined the long-term safety of ferric citrate in controlling and managing serum phosphorus levels over a 56-week treatment period when compared to an active control for 52 weeks in the Safety Assessment Period and to placebo in a randomized, open-label, placebo-controlled four-week Efficacy Assessment Period.

#### *Study Design*

25 This trial was a three-period, multicenter, safety and efficacy clinical trial. The first period was a two-week washout (the Washout Period), the second period was a 52-week randomized, open-label, active control safety assessment (the Safety Assessment Period), and the third period was a four-week, randomized, open-label, placebo-controlled, efficacy assessment (the Efficacy Assessment Period) in only patients randomized to treatment with ferric citrate 30 during the Safety Assessment Period.

Period 1 (Washout Period). Patients were washed out from their current phosphate binder for up to approximately two weeks. Only patients who achieve a serum phosphorus  $\geq 6.0$  mg/dL during the Washout Period were moved into the Safety Assessment Period. Patients who did not achieve a serum phosphorus  $\geq 6.0$  mg/dL during washout were screen failures.

5        Period 2 (Safety Assessment Period). Following washout, patients were randomized 2:1 to either the ferric citrate group or an active-control group of either calcium acetate, sevelamer carbonate, or any combination of calcium acetate and sevelamer carbonate at the discretion of the PI and/or patient. Both ferric citrate and the active-control medications were provided by the sponsor. Patients were followed on their randomized assignment for safety assessments over 52 weeks. If a patient was  $\geq 80\%$  compliant with 12 caplets/day of ferric citrate or 12 pills/day of calcium acetate and/or sevelamer carbonate at least 2 visits in a row, and had a serum phosphorus  $> 8.0$  mg/dL, the patient was considered a treatment failure and stopped study drug but continued to complete all trial visits. The ferric citrate or active-control drug was stopped and the patient returned to the care of their primary nephrologist, but continued to be followed 10 for all trial visits and outcomes.

15

Period 3 (Efficacy Assessment Period). Following the Safety Assessment Period, those patients randomized to treatment with ferric citrate entered a four-week, randomized, open-label, placebo-controlled Efficacy Assessment Period. Patients entering the Efficacy Assessment Period were re-randomized 1:1 to treatment with ferric citrate or placebo.

20        A Dietician provided a study-supplied list of Vitamin D-rich foods to the patient either during the Washout Period or at the Randomization Visit and instructed the patient to keep their diet consistent in Vitamin D-rich food throughout the trial as much as possible. Within 30 days before the start of the Efficacy Assessment Period, the Dietician again reviewed the list of Vitamin D-rich foods with the patient and reminded the patient to try to keep their diet consistent 25 in terms of Vitamin D-rich foods until the end of the trial, if possible. The Dietician was blinded as to assignment to ferric citrate or placebo during the Efficacy Assessment Period.

30        Laboratory measurements were conducted throughout the study to assess safety and efficacy. The dose and specific IV iron preparation administered (if necessary) were at the discretion of the PI. Oral iron therapy was not permitted. Calcium-containing drugs were not permitted if given within two hours of food ingestion (calcium-containing drugs were permitted two hours or more prior to or following food ingestion or at bedtime for the purpose of raising

the serum calcium). No Vitamin C supplements were permitted. Patients were allowed to take daily water soluble vitamins that include a small amount of Vitamin C (e.g., Centrum, Nephrocaps, Renaphro), but those patients were instructed to take them two hours or more prior to or following food ingestion or at bedtime. IV iron therapy was not permitted if the ferritin 5 level is > 1000 micrograms/L or the TSAT is > 30%. If it was deemed in the patient's best interest to receive IV iron outside these parameters, the Clinical Coordinating Center (CCC) was consulted, and when approved and documented, was not considered a protocol exception.

#### ***Study Duration***

10 The duration of the trial was approximately 18 to 24 months, with approximately six to eight months allocated for patient Screening, Washout Period, and Randomization, 12 months for the Safety Assessment Period, and one (1) month for the Efficacy Assessment Period.

#### ***Study Population***

15 ESRD patients on thrice-weekly hemodialysis or on peritoneal dialysis for at least three months prior to the Screening Visit (Visit 0) who were currently taking  $\geq 3$  and  $\leq 18$  pills/day of calcium acetate, calcium carbonate, lanthanum carbonate, and/or sevelamer (carbonate or hydrochloride or sevelamer powder equivalent to sevelamer tablets), or any other agent serving as a phosphate binder, or any combination of these agents were eligible for enrollment. It was anticipated that there would be approximately 20 to 40 centers in the United States and approximately 5 to 10 centers in Israel. Up to approximately 775 patients were screened to 20 randomize approximately 350 patients to the ferric citrate group or active-control group. Each of approximately 25 to 50 sites were asked to randomize no more than approximately 35 patients.

##### Inclusion criteria:

- Males or non-pregnant, non-breast-feeding females
- Age  $\geq 18$  years
- On thrice-weekly hemodialysis or on peritoneal dialysis for at least the previous three months prior to Screening Visit (Visit 0)
- Serum phosphorus levels  $\geq 2.5$  mg/dL and  $\leq 8.0$  mg/dL at Screening Visit (Visit 0)
- Serum phosphorus  $\geq 6.0$  mg/dL during the Washout Period (Visits 2 or 3)
- Taking 3 to 18 pills/day of calcium acetate, calcium carbonate, lanthanum carbonate, and/or sevelamer (carbonate or hydrochloride or equivalent sevelamer powder) or any 30

other agent serving as a phosphate binder, or any combination of these agents as reported by the patient at Screening Visit (Visit 0)

- Serum ferritin <1000 micrograms/L and TSAT < 50% at the Screening Visit (Visit 0)
- Willing to be discontinued from current phosphate binder and randomized to ferric citrate or active-control group
- Willing and able to give informed consent
- Life expectancy >1 year

Exclusion Criteria:

- Parathyroidectomy within six months prior to Screening Visit (Visit 0)
- Actively symptomatic gastrointestinal bleeding or inflammatory bowel disease
- Serum phosphorus levels  $\geq 10.0$  mg/dL documented in all of the three monthly laboratories (done routinely in the dialysis unit) in the 3 months prior to the Screening Visit (Visit 0)
- History of malignancy in the last five years (treated cervical or non-melanomatous skin cancer may be permitted if approved by the CCC)
- Absolute requirement for oral iron therapy
- Absolute requirement for Vitamin C (multivitamins [Nephrocaps, Renaphro, etc.] allowed)
- Absolute requirement for calcium-, magnesium-, or aluminum-containing drugs with meals
- Intolerance to oral iron-containing products
- Intolerance to orally administered calcium acetate and sevelamer carbonate

***Study Drug***

KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) was the drug under investigation in this study. The drug was

25 administered as caplets, each caplet comprising 1 gram (1,000 mg) of ferric citrate containing approximately 210 mg of ferric iron.

***Study Drug Administration***

The target goal for serum phosphorus was 3.5 to 5.5 mg/dL.

Ferric citrate, active control, and placebo were considered study drugs. Eligible patients 30 with a serum phosphorus level  $\geq 6.0$  mg/dL after the Washout Period were randomized in a 2:1 ratio to the ferric citrate group or the active-control group. For patients randomized to ferric

citrate, the starting dose was 6 caplets/day. For patients randomized to the active-control group, the starting dose of phosphate binder was the last dose that was administered immediately prior to the start of the Washout Period (if the patient remained on the same phosphate binder) or at the discretion of the PI, guided by the package insert, if the patient changed binders. However, 5 for patients whose previous dose of phosphate binder exceeded 12 pills/day, if randomized to the active-control group, their starting dose of active-control drug was at the discretion of the PI, but will not exceed 12 pills/day. Calcium acetate 667 mg capsules and sevelamer carbonate 800 mg tablets were used and were supplied by Keryx Biopharmaceuticals, Inc. (Keryx) for the duration of the trial.

10 Serum phosphorus and calcium were checked at Visit 5 (Week 1), and every two weeks during the first 12 weeks after Visit 4 (Randomization Visit), and monthly for the rest of the Safety Assessment Period. During the Efficacy Assessment Period, serum phosphorus and calcium were drawn weekly. These values guided study drug administration. While on study drug, the use of other phosphate binders was not permitted. Dose adjustments in ferric citrate 15 were guided by a titration schedule. The titration of calcium acetate and sevelamer carbonate throughout the 52-week Safety Assessment Period were according to the current package inserts for these agents and/or at the discretion of the site PI.

20 Patients took study drug orally with or within one hour of meals or snacks. Patients were instructed not to take the study drug if greater than one hour has passed since the ingestion of their meals or snacks. The PI or designee at each site dispensed the study drug to the patient and 25 instructed the patient on how to administer it. It was recognized that some patients required a different distribution in pills in a given day due to snacks or missed meals. If the patient was receiving the total number of pills per day required by protocol in any distribution with meals, there was no need for approval by the CCC (for example, a patient on a starting dose of ferric citrate 6 g/day may take 1 caplet with breakfast, 1 with a snack, 2 with lunch, and 2 with dinner).

#### ***Laboratory Assessments***

For patients on hemodialysis, blood samples were obtained pre-dialysis on the second or third dialysis session of the week, if possible. For patients who are on hemodialysis who dialyze on Monday, Wednesday or Friday, all blood samples were drawn pre-dialysis on Wednesday or 30 Friday, if possible. For patients who dialyze on Tuesday, Thursday or Saturday, all blood samples were drawn pre-dialysis on Thursday or Saturday, if possible. These collection methods

were allowed to be different for sites in Israel. The total amount of blood collected from each patient for trial-related analyses was approximately 15 ml per visit.

For patients who were on peritoneal dialysis, blood samples were collected either at the dialysis unit or the clinic as per the study protocols.

5        Serum phosphorus and calcium were performed at Screening (Visit 0); weekly during the Washout Period after Visit 1 (Week -2); at Visit 4 (Randomization Visit); at Visits 5 (Week 1), 6 (Week 2), 7 (Week 4), 8 (Week 6), 9 (Week 8), 10 (Week 10), 11 (Week 12), 12 (Week 16), 13 (Week 20), 14 (Week 24), 15 (Week 28), 16 (Week 32), 17 (Week 36), 18 (Week 40), 19 (Week 44), 20 (Week 48), and 21 (Week 52) of the 52-week Safety Assessment Period; and at Visits 22 10      (Week 53), 23 (Week 54), 24 (Week 55) and 25 (Week 56) of the Efficacy Assessment Period.

15      Complete Blood Count (CBC) (white blood cell [WBC] count, white blood cell types [WBC differential], red blood cell [RBC] count, hematocrit [HCT], hemoglobin [Hgb], red blood cell indices, platelet [thrombocyte] count) was done at the Randomization Visit (Visit 4); at Visits 11 (Week 12), 14 (Week 24), 17 (Week 36), 20 (Week 48), and 21 (Week 52) of the 52-week Safety Assessment Period; and at Visit 25 (Week 56) of the Efficacy Assessment Period.

20      Complete Chemistry Profile (sodium, potassium, chloride, blood urea nitrogen (BUN), creatinine, glucose [random], aspartate aminotransferase [AST], alanine aminotransferase [ALT], alkaline phosphate [ALP], total bilirubin, total protein, albumin, and albumin-adjusted calcium) was done at the Randomization Visit (Visit 4); at Visits 11 (Week 12), 14 (Week 24), 17 (Week 36), 20 (Week 48), and 21 (Week 52) of the 52-week Safety Assessment Period; and at Visit 25 (Week 56) of the Efficacy Assessment Period.

25      Iron studies including serum iron, ferritin, TSAT, and total iron-binding capacity were done at Screening (Visit 0); at the Randomization Visit (Visit 4); at Visits 7 (Week 4), 9 (Week 8), 11 (Week 12), 12 (Week 16), 13 (Week 20), 14 (Week 24), 15 (Week 28), 16 (Week 32), 17 (Week 36), 18 (Week 40), 19 (Week 44), 20 (Week 48), and 21 (Week 52) of the 52-week Safety Assessment Period; and at Visit 25 (Week 56) of the Efficacy Assessment Period.

Intact parathyroid hormone (iPTH) levels were done at the Randomization Visit (Visit 4); at Visits 11 (Week 12), 17 (Week 36), and 21 (Week 52) during the Safety Assessment Period; and at Visit 25 (Week 56) of the Efficacy Assessment Period.

Serum vitamins (25-dihydroxy-vitamin D3, vitamin A, vitamin B-12, vitamin E, vitamin K, and folic acid) were done at the Randomization Visit (Visit 4,); and at Visits 11 (Week 12), 17 (Week 36), and 21 (Week 52) during the Safety Assessment Period.

5 A lipid profile (total cholesterol, low-density lipoprotein [LDL], high-density lipoprotein [HDL], and triglycerides) was done at the Randomization Visit (Visit 4); at Visits 11 (Week 12), 17 (Week 36), and 21 (Week 52) during the Safety Assessment Period.

Serum aluminum was done at the Randomization Visit (Visit 4) and at Visit 21 (Week 52).

10 Serum bicarbonate was performed at a local laboratory and was done at the Randomization Visit (Visit 4); at Visits 11 (Week 12), 14 (Week 24), 17 (Week 36), 20 (Week 48) and 21 (Week 52) during the Safety Assessment Period; and at Visit 25 (Week 56) of the Efficacy Assessment Period.

Except for serum bicarbonate, which was collected and measured locally, all labs were performed by Spectra Clinical Research, Rockleigh, NJ, USA.

15 ***Statistical Considerations: Efficacy***

Unless otherwise stated, all hypotheses were tested at a 2-sided significance level of 0.05 and the 95% confidence interval was two-sided. All analyses were performed using SAS Version 9.

20 Prior to the database lock, a detailed Statistical Analysis Plan (SAP) was completed and placed on file. The Data Analysis Plan contained a more comprehensive explanation than described below of the methodology used in the statistical analyses. The Data Analysis Plan also contained the rules and data handling conventions used to perform the analyses, and the procedure used for accounting for missing data.

25 Summary tabulations displayed the number of observations, mean, standard deviation, median, minimum, maximum, and appropriate percentiles for continuous variables, and the number and percentage by category for categorical data. Summaries present data by treatment arm and overall, if appropriate. The data listings include all available efficacy and safety data.

30 The efficacy analyses were based on Full Analysis (FA) population that consisted of all patients who took at least one dose of study medication and provided baseline and at least one post-baseline efficacy assessment. The safety analyses were based on safety population that was consistent of all patients who took at least one dose of study medication.

There were two unique and distinct baseline assessments. The baseline for the Safety Assessment Period was the Randomization Visit (Visit 4) and was defined as “Week-0-baseline.” The baseline for the Efficacy Assessment Period was the last visit of the Safety Assessment Period (Visit 21, Week 52) and was defined as “study-baseline.”

5 The primary efficacy outcome of this trial was the effect of ferric citrate vs. placebo on the change in serum phosphorus from study-baseline (Visit 21, Week 52) to end of the Efficacy Assessment Period (Visit 25, Week 56). The primary efficacy variable was analyzed via an ANCOVA model with treatment as the fixed effect and study-baseline as the covariate. Between-treatment differences were estimated and two-sided 95% confidence intervals for the 10 differences were presented.

The secondary endpoints for this trial include the following:

1. CHANGE FROM BASELINE IN FERRITIN AT WEEK 52

Change from baseline in ferritin at Week 52 as compared to baseline (Visit 4). This variable will be analyzed using LOCF methodology. ANCOVA will be employed. The model 15 will include treatment (fixed effect), and baseline (covariate). A sensitivity analysis will be performed using MMRM method.

2. CHANGE FROM BASELINE IN TSAT AT WEEK 52

Change from baseline in TSAT at Week 52 as compared to baseline (Visit 4). This variable will be analyzed using LOCF methodology. ANCOVA will be employed. The model 20 will include treatment (fixed effect), and baseline (covariate). A sensitivity analysis will be performed using MMRM method.

3. CUMULATIVE USE OF IV IRON OVER 52 WEEKS

The cumulative IV iron intake from randomization to Week 52 will be compared between treatment groups. This variable will be similarly analyzed as the primary efficacy variable using 25 ANCOVA method. The two-sided 95% confidence intervals of treatment differences for all above comparisons will be presented.

4. CUMULATIVE USE OF EPO (ESA) OVER 52 WEEKS

The cumulative EPO (ESA) administrated from randomization to Week 52 will be compared between treatment groups. This variable will be similarly analyzed as the primary 30 efficacy variable using ANCOVA method. The two-sided 95% confidence intervals of treatment differences for all above comparisons will be presented.

Treatment differences between ferric citrate and all active control binders as well as the differences between ferric citrate and sevelamer carbonate as a single agent at Week 12 (Visit 11) in terms of change from Visit-4 baseline in serum phosphorus, phosphorus times calcium product, and in serum calcium will be analyzed. These variables will be analyzed using LOCF methodology. ANCOVA will be employed. The model will include treatment (fixed effect), and Visit-4 baseline (covariate). An analysis using MMRM method will be conducted as a sensitivity analysis. The least square mean estimates of the treatment effects as well as the 2-sided 95% confidence intervals (CI) of the treatment effects will be derived. Non-inferiority will be claimed if the lower-bound of the two-sided 95% confidence interval of the treatment difference is within 20% of least square mean of the control.

##### 5. PERCENTAGE OF PATIENTS ACHIEVING PHOSPHORUS GOAL

1. Percentage of patients achieving phosphorus goal ( $\leq 5.5\text{mg/dL}$ ) at Weeks 12, 24, 36, 48, 52 and 56 – These variables will be analyzed via chi-square tests. Between-treatment differences in the percentages will be estimated and two-sided 95% confidence intervals for the differences will be calculated using normal approximation without continuity correction.
- 15 2. Percentage of patients achieving the phosphorus goal ( $\leq 5.5\text{mg/dL}$ ) at Week 56 for patients remaining on study medication during the four-week Efficacy Assessment Period – These variables will be analyzed via chi-square tests. Between-treatment differences in the percentages will be estimated and two-sided 95% confidence intervals for the differences will be calculated using normal approximation without continuity correction.
- 20 3. Percentage of patients obtaining a serum phosphorus  $\geq 9.0\text{mg/dL}$  at any time during the four-week Efficacy Assessment Period – These variables will be analyzed via chi-square tests. Between-treatment differences in the percentages will be estimated and two-sided 95% confidence intervals for the differences will be calculated using normal approximation without continuity correction.

##### 25 6. CHANGE IN SERUM PHOSPHORUS CONCENTRATION

1. Change in serum phosphorus concentration at Weeks 12, 24, 36, 48, and 52 as compared to baseline (Visit 4). This variable will be analyzed using LOCF methodology. ANCOVA will be employed. The model will include treatment (fixed effect), and baseline (covariate).

## 7. CHANGE IN OTHER LABORATORY MEASURES

1. Change in serum calcium concentration at Weeks 12, 24, 36, 48, and 52 as compared to baseline (Visit 4). This variable will be analyzed using LOCF methodology. ANCOVA will be employed. The model will include treatment (fixed effect), and baseline (covariate).
- 5 2. Change in ferritin, and TSAT at Weeks 12, 24, 36 and 48 as compared to baseline (Visit 4). This variable will be analyzed using LOCF methodology. ANCOVA will be employed. The model will include treatment (fixed effect), and baseline (covariate).
- 10 3. Change in serum iron and TIBC at Weeks 12, 24, 36, 48, and 52 as compared to baseline (Visit 4). This variable will be analyzed using LOCF methodology. ANCOVA will be employed. The model will include treatment (fixed effect), and baseline (covariate).
4. Change in Ca x P product at Weeks 12, 24, 36, 48, and 52 as compared to baseline (Visit 4). This variable will be analyzed using LOCF methodology. ANCOVA will be employed. The model will include treatment (fixed effect), and baseline (covariate).
- 15 5. Change in iPTH at Weeks 12, 36, 52, and 56 as compared to baseline (Visit 4). This variable will be analyzed using LOCF methodology. ANCOVA will be employed. The model will include treatment (fixed effect), and baseline (covariate).
- 20 6. Change in serum 25-dihydroxy-vitamin D3, vitamin A, vitamin B-12, vitamin E, vitamin K and folic acid at Weeks 12, 36, and 52 as compared to baseline (Visit 4). This variable will be analyzed using LOCF methodology. ANCOVA will be employed. The model will include treatment (fixed effect), and baseline (covariate).
7. Change in serum bicarbonate concentration at Weeks 12, 36, and 52 as compared to baseline (Visit 4). This variable will be analyzed using LOCF methodology. ANCOVA will be employed. The model will include treatment (fixed effect), and baseline (covariate).
- 25 8. Change in IV iron intake at Weeks 12, 24, 36, 48, and 52 as compared to baseline (Visit 4). This variable will be analyzed using LOCF methodology. ANCOVA will be employed. The model will include treatment (fixed effect), and baseline (covariate).
9. Change in the use of EPO (ESA) administered at Weeks 12, 24, 36, 48, and 52 as compared to baseline (Visit 4). This variable will be analyzed using LOCF methodology. ANCOVA will be employed. The model will include treatment (fixed effect), and baseline (covariate).
- 30 10. Change in the use of Vitamin D supplementation (and its analogs) and Sensipar (cinacalcet) at Weeks 12, 24, 36, 48, and 52 as compared to baseline (Visit 4). This variable will be

analyzed using LOCF methodology. ANCOVA will be employed. The model will include treatment (fixed effect), and baseline (covariate).

11. Change in LDL, HDL, and triglycerides at Weeks 12, 36, and 52 as compared to baseline (Visit 4). This variable will be analyzed using LOCF methodology. ANCOVA will be employed. The model will include treatment (fixed effect), and baseline (covariate).

#### 5 *Statistical Considerations: Safety*

Safety was assessed by recording and monitoring adverse events, concomitant medication use, physical examinations, and sequential blood by treatment assignment. Rates of adverse events were summarized overall and by organ system class, preferred term, severity, and 10 suspected relationship to study drug by treatment assignment. AEs were summarized for the Washout Period, Safety Assessment Period, and Efficacy Assessment Period separately by treatment assignment. The changes from baseline in laboratory parameters over time were summarized by treatment assignment.

#### 15 *Statistical Considerations: Power*

Approximately 434 patients were randomized in a 2:1 ratio to either ferric citrate (approximately 288 patients) or active-control (approximately 146 patients), to be treated during the Safety Assessment Period. This sample size provided at least 90% power to detect a treatment difference between ferric citrate and placebo at a 5% significance level, assuming that the treatment difference is 1.2 and the common standard deviation is 2.

#### 20 *Results*

Summary of Treatment Differences in Serum Phosphorus, Phosphorus times Calcium Product and Serum Calcium Change from Study-baseline at Week 12 between Ferric Citrate and Sevelamer Carbonate as a Single Agent (ANCOVA Method), Full Analysis Population – shown in Table 12:

25 **Table 12:**

Statistics	KRX-0502 in Safety Assessment Period (N=288)	Sevelamer Carbonate in Safety Assessment Period (N=73)	Treatment Differences [1]
<b>Phosphorus (mg/dL)</b>			
Baseline			
N	277	72	
Mean (SD)	7.39 (1.557)	7.51 (1.633)	
Median	7.20	7.40	
(Min, Max)	(2.7, 12.3)	(4.3, 12.9)	
Week 12			

Statistics	KRX-0502 in Safety Assessment Period (N=288)	Sevelamer Carbonate in Safety Assessment Period (N=73)	Treatment Differences [1]
N	277	72	
Mean (SD)	5.38 (1.374)	5.23 (1.713)	
Median	5.10	5.00	
(Min, Max)	(2.4, 9.9)	(2.5, 14.1)	
Week 12 Change from Baseline			
N	277	72	
Mean (SD)	-2.01 (1.887)	-2.28 (2.169)	
Median	-2.00	-2.45	
(Min, Max)	(-7.6, 4.6)	(-8.9, 6.7)	
95% CI	(5.21, 5.55)	(4.89, 5.55)	(-0.21, 0.54)
LS Mean (SE)	5.38 (0.09)	5.22 (0.17)	0.16 (0.19)
p-value			0.3900
Product Of Calcium And Phosphorus			
Baseline			
N	277	72	
Mean (SD)	65.4075 (15.47697)	68.0872 (16.29263)	
Median	62.7000	66.2700	
(Min, Max)	(25.920, 123.210)	(36.660, 123.840)	
Week 12			
N	277	72	
Mean (SD)	48.8440 (12.93765)	48.0251 (14.36518)	
Median	47.5000	46.2800	
(Min, Max)	(20.440, 92.650)	(22.500, 109.980)	
Week 12 Change from Baseline			
N	277	72	
Mean (SD)	-16.5635 (16.97535)	-20.0621 (19.17393)	
Median	-16.7400	-19.8500	
(Min, Max)	(-78.660, 42.700)	(-86.200, 46.340)	
95% CI	(47.47, 50.48)	(44.57, 50.48)	(-1.87, 4.77)
LS Mean (SE)	48.97 (0.77)	47.52 (1.50)	1.45 (1.69)
p-value			0.3903
Calcium (mg/dL)			
Baseline			
N	278	72	
Mean (SD)	8.843 (0.8048)	9.056 (0.7291)	
Median	8.900	9.150	
(Min, Max)	(6.30, 11.10)	(6.70, 10.30)	
Week 12			
N	278	72	
Mean (SD)	9.089 (0.7568)	9.231 (0.7210)	
Median	9.100	9.400	
(Min, Max)	(6.30, 12.00)	(7.00, 10.60)	
Week 12 Change from Baseline			
N	278	72	
Mean (SD)	0.245 (0.7486)	0.175 (0.7509)	
Median	0.200	0.100	
(Min, Max)	(-2.80, 3.00)	(-1.50, 2.30)	
95% CI	(9.04, 9.19)	(9.00, 9.29)	(-0.20, 0.13)
LS Mean (SE)	9.11 (0.04)	9.15 (0.08)	-0.04 (0.08)
p-value			0.6765

**Note:** [1].The LS Mean treatment difference and p-value for the change in Serum Phosphorus, Ca x P and Ca is created via an ANCOVA model with treatment as the fixed effect and Day-0 baseline as the covariate. Between-

treatment differences are calculated as the LS Mean (KRX-0502) - LS Mean (Control). Only subjects with both a baseline and post baseline observations for the parameter of interest were included.

### Summary of Mean Serum Phosphorus Values at Weeks 12, 24, 36, 48, and 52 and

5 Change from Study-baseline by Treatment (ANCOVA Method), Full Analysis Population – shown in Table 13:

**Table 13:**

Statistics	KRX-0502 in Safety Assessment Period (N=288)	Control in Safety Assessment Period (N=146)	Treatment Differences [1]
Day 0 Baseline			
N	277	144	
Mean (SD)	7.39 (1.557)	7.55 (1.750)	
Median	7.20	7.40	
(Min, Max)	(2.7, 12.3)	(4.3, 12.9)	
Week 12			
N	277	144	
Mean (SD)	5.38 (1.374)	5.34 (1.652)	
Median	5.10	5.05	
(Min, Max)	(2.4, 9.9)	(2.5, 14.1)	
Week 12 Change from Baseline			
N	277	144	
Mean (SD)	-2.01 (1.887)	-2.21 (2.086)	
Median	-2.00	-2.25	
(Min, Max)	(-7.6, 4.6)	(-8.9, 6.7)	
95% CI	(5.22, 5.56)	(5.08, 5.56)	(-0.23, 0.36)
LS Mean (SE)	5.39 (0.09)	5.32 (0.12)	0.07 (0.15)
p-value			0.6594
Week 24			
N	277	144	
Mean (SD)	5.24 (1.455)	5.49 (1.536)	
Median	5.10	5.30	
(Min, Max)	(1.3, 10.7)	(2.0, 14.1)	
Week 24 Change from Baseline			
N	277	144	
Mean (SD)	-2.14 (1.844)	-2.06 (2.125)	
Median	-2.10	-2.00	
(Min, Max)	(-7.5, 3.9)	(-8.4, 6.7)	
95% CI	(5.08, 5.43)	(5.23, 5.71)	(-0.51, 0.08)
LS Mean (SE)	5.26 (0.09)	5.47 (0.12)	-0.21 (0.15)
p-value			0.1510
Week 36			
N	277	144	
Mean (SD)	5.22 (1.348)	5.32 (1.557)	
Median	5.10	5.10	
(Min, Max)	(1.1, 9.5)	(2.2, 14.1)	
Week 36 Change from Baseline			
N	277	144	
Mean (SD)	-2.16 (1.748)	-2.24 (2.037)	
Median	-2.10	-2.10	
(Min, Max)	(-7.4, 3.2)	(-8.1, 6.7)	
95% CI	(5.08, 5.40)	(5.07, 5.52)	(-0.33, 0.22)
LS Mean (SE)	5.24 (0.08)	5.29 (0.11)	-0.05 (0.14)
p-value			0.7075
Week 48			

Statistics	KRX-0502 in Safety Assessment Period (N=288)	Control in Safety Assessment Period (N=146)	Treatment Differences [1]
N	277	144	
Mean (SD)	5.32 (1.468)	5.48 (1.563)	
Median	5.20	5.35	
(Min, Max)	(2.2, 10.8)	(2.2, 14.1)	
Week 48 Change from Baseline			
N	277	144	
Mean (SD)	-2.07 (1.828)	-2.07 (2.036)	
Median	-2.10	-1.90	
(Min, Max)	(-8.4, 4.6)	(-7.8, 6.7)	
95% CI	(5.16, 5.50)	(5.22, 5.69)	(-0.42, 0.17)
LS Mean (SE)	5.33 (0.09)	5.46 (0.12)	-0.12 (0.15)
p-value			0.4086
Week 52			
N	277	144	
Mean (SD)	5.32 (1.437)	5.36 (1.572)	
Median	5.20	5.10	
(Min, Max)	(1.1, 10.7)	(2.6, 14.1)	
Week 52 Change from Baseline			
N	277	144	
Mean (SD)	-2.06 (1.834)	-2.19 (2.220)	
Median	-2.20	-2.10	
(Min, Max)	(-7.1, 3.7)	(-9.8, 6.7)	
95% CI	(5.16, 5.51)	(5.10, 5.58)	(-0.30, 0.29)
LS Mean (SE)	5.33 (0.09)	5.34 (0.12)	-0.01 (0.15)
p-value			0.9696

**Note:** [1]. The LS Mean treatment difference and p-value for the change in Ferritin is created via an ANCOVA model with treatment as the fixed effect and Day-0 baseline as the covariate. Between-treatment differences are calculated as the LS Mean (KRX-0502) – LS Mean (control).

Only subjects with both a baseline and post baseline observations for the parameter of interest were included.

5

Summary of Mean Serum Phosphorus Values and Change from Week-52-baseline by Treatment and Visit during the Efficacy Assessment Period (ANCOVA Method), Full Analysis Population – shown in Table 14:

**Table 14:**

Statistics	KRX-0502 in Efficacy Assessment Period (N=92)	Placebo in Efficacy Assessment Period (N=91)	Treatment Differences [1]
Week 52 Baseline			
N	85	82	
Mean (SD)	5.16 (1.259)	5.25 (1.475)	
Median	5.10	5.30	
(Min, Max)	(2.2, 8.7)	(1.1, 8.8)	
Week 53			
N	76	79	
Mean (SD)	4.90 (1.152)	6.66 (1.611)	
Median	4.95	6.50	
(Min, Max)	(2.0, 7.7)	(2.4, 10.6)	
Week 53 Change from Baseline			
N	76	79	
Mean (SD)	-0.31 (1.432)	1.39 (1.626)	

Statistics	KRX-0502 in Efficacy Assessment Period (N=92)	Placebo in Efficacy Assessment Period (N=91)	Treatment Differences[1]
	Period (N=92)	Assessment Period (N=91)	
Median	-0.30	1.30	
(Min, Max)	(-4.6, 2.9)	(-2.1, 5.5)	
95% CI	(4.62, 5.21)	(6.36, 6.94)	(-2.15, -1.32)
LS Mean (SE)	4.92 (0.15)	6.65 (0.15)	-1.73 (0.21)
p-value			<0.0001
Week 54			
N	84	81	
Mean (SD)	4.78 (1.309)	6.91 (1.724)	
Median	4.70	6.80	
(Min, Max)	(2.1, 8.9)	(3.4, 10.6)	
Week 54 Change from Baseline			
N	84	81	
Mean (SD)	-0.36 (1.404)	1.65 (1.847)	
Median	-0.40	1.60	
(Min, Max)	(-3.9, 3.8)	(-2.3, 6.5)	
95% CI	(4.50, 5.11)	(6.57, 7.20)	(-2.52, -1.64)
LS Mean (SE)	4.80 (0.16)	6.88 (0.16)	-2.08 (0.22)
p-value			<0.0001
Week 55			
N	85	82	
Mean (SD)	4.75 (1.237)	6.96 (1.808)	
Median	4.60	7.00	
(Min, Max)	(2.8, 9.5)	(2.7, 10.6)	
Week 55 Change from Baseline			
N	85	82	
Mean (SD)	-0.41 (1.444)	1.71 (1.967)	
Median	-0.50	1.85	
(Min, Max)	(-3.2, 4.6)	(-2.6, 6.5)	
95% CI	(4.45, 5.08)	(6.62, 7.26)	(-2.63, -1.73)
LS Mean (SE)	4.76 (0.16)	6.94 (0.16)	-2.18 (0.23)
p-value			<0.0001
Week 56			
N	85	82	
Mean (SD)	4.92 (1.323)	7.24 (1.812)	
Median	4.60	7.25	
(Min, Max)	(2.3, 9.5)	(3.0, 10.6)	
Week 56 Change from Baseline			
N	85	82	
Mean (SD)	-0.23 (1.484)	1.99 (1.979)	
Median	-0.50	2.20	
(Min, Max)	(-2.9, 4.6)	(-2.7, 6.5)	
95% CI	(4.62, 5.26)	(6.89, 7.55)	(-2.74, -1.82)
LS Mean (SE)	4.94 (0.16)	7.22 (0.17)	-2.28 (0.23)
p-value			<0.0001

**Note:** [1]. The LS Mean treatment difference and p-value for the change in Serum Phosphorus is created via an ANCOVA model with treatment as the fixed effect and Week-52 baseline as the covariate. Between-treatment differences are calculated as the LS Mean (KRX-0502) - LS Mean (Placebo). Only subjects with both a baseline and post baseline observations for the parameter of interest were included.

Summary of Mean Ferritin at Weeks 12, 24, 36, 48, and 52 and Change from Study-baseline by Treatment (ANCOVA Method), Full Analysis Population – shown in Table 15:

**Table 15:**

Statistics	KRX-0502 in Safety Assessment Period (N=288)	Control in Safety Assessment Period (N=146)	Treatment Differences [1]
Day 0 Baseline			
N	249	134	
Mean (SD)	595.00 (293.896)	615.76 (307.842)	
Median	587.00	574.00	
(Min, Max)	(22.0, 1612.0)	(11.0, 1548.0)	
Week 12			
N	243	134	
Mean (SD)	751.19 (379.766)	656.68 (321.518)	
Median	718.00	646.50	
(Min, Max)	(25.0, 2691.0)	(13.0, 1664.0)	
Week 12 Change from Baseline			
N	243	134	
Mean (SD)	158.88 (283.314)	40.92 (273.201)	
Median	123.00	26.50	
(Min, Max)	(-882.0, 1660.0)	(-794.0, 920.0)	
95% CI	(723.34, 792.15)	(598.46, 691.14)	(55.22, 170.68)
LS Mean (SE)	757.75 (17.50)	644.80 (23.57)	112.95 (29.36)
p-value			0.0001
Week 24			
N	247	134	
Mean (SD)	846.90 (414.672)	658.44 (301.698)	
Median	830.00	675.00	
(Min, Max)	(91.0, 2413.0)	(11.0, 1525.0)	
Week 24 Change from Baseline			
N	247	134	
Mean (SD)	252.49 (326.299)	42.68 (291.868)	
Median	220.00	35.50	
(Min, Max)	(-628.0, 1594.0)	(-997.0, 757.0)	
95% CI	(814.24, 890.79)	(596.11, 700.06)	(139.87, 269.00)
LS Mean (SE)	852.52 (19.47)	648.08 (26.43)	204.43 (32.84)
p-value			<0.0001
Week 36			
N	247	134	
Mean (SD)	863.18 (444.094)	635.96 (326.652)	
Median	818.00	612.00	
(Min, Max)	(51.0, 3181.0)	(13.0, 2080.0)	
Week 36 Change from Baseline			
N	247	134	
Mean (SD)	268.77 (391.292)	20.20 (328.820)	
Median	223.00	11.00	
(Min, Max)	(-754.0, 2193.0)	(-958.0, 1589.0)	
95% CI	(823.50, 912.72)	(566.30, 687.45)	(165.99, 316.49)
LS Mean (SE)	868.11 (22.69)	626.87 (30.81)	241.24 (38.27)
p-value			<0.0001
Week 48			
N	247	134	
Mean (SD)	882.10 (461.772)	626.63 (353.836)	
Median	850.00	597.00	
(Min, Max)	(44.0, 3188.0)	(84.0, 1784.0)	
Week 48 Change from Baseline			
N	247	134	
Mean (SD)	287.69 (395.752)	10.87 (352.066)	
Median	233.00	13.50	
(Min, Max)	(-667.0, 2032.0)	(-1184.0, 1409.0)	
95% CI	(840.95, 933.86)	(553.76, 679.93)	(192.20, 348.93)
LS Mean (SE)	887.41 (23.63)	616.85 (32.08)	270.56 (39.85)
p-value			<0.0001

Statistics	KRX-0502 in Safety Assessment Period (N=288)	Control in Safety Assessment Period (N=146)	Treatment Differences[1]
Week 52			
N	249	134	
Mean (SD)	897.12 (485.296)	625.30 (359.018)	
Median	858.00	576.00	
(Min, Max)	(44.0, 3144.0)	(33.0, 1789.0)	
Week 52 Change from Baseline			
N	249	134	
Mean (SD)	302.11 (435.183)	9.54 (360.411)	
Median	224.00	21.50	
(Min, Max)	(-785.0, 2032.0)	(-1165.0, 1409.0)	
95% CI	(852.25, 951.66)	(548.54, 684.08)	(201.58, 369.71)
LS Mean (SE)	901.95 (25.28)	616.31 (34.47)	285.65 (42.76)
p-value			<0.0001

**Note:** [1]. The LS Mean treatment difference and p-value for the change in Ferritin is created via an ANCOVA model with treatment as the fixed effect and Day-0 baseline as the covariate. Between-treatment differences are calculated as the LS Mean (KRX-0502) – LS Mean (control).

Only subjects with both a baseline and post baseline observations for the parameter of interest were included.

5

Summary of Mean TSAT at Weeks 12, 24, 36, 48, and 52 and Change from Study-baseline by Treatment (ANCOVA Method), Full Analysis Population – shown in Table 16:

**Table 16:**

Statistics	KRX-0502 in Safety Assessment Period (N=288)	Control in Safety Assessment Period (N=146)	Treatment Differences[1]
Day 0 Baseline			
N	244	131	
Mean (SD)	31.0 (10.99)	31.0 (11.75)	
Median	29.5	29.0	
(Min, Max)	(10, 83)	(10, 73)	
Week 12			
N	238	131	
Mean (SD)	40.2 (16.00)	31.4 (12.13)	
Median	37.0	29.0	
(Min, Max)	(12, 85)	(10, 79)	
Week 12 Change from Baseline			
N	238	131	
Mean (SD)	9.2 (17.95)	0.5 (15.91)	
Median	7.0	1.0	
(Min, Max)	(-61, 62)	(-54, 51)	
95% CI	(38.31, 42.03)	(28.92, 33.94)	(5.61, 11.87)
LS Mean (SE)	40.17 (0.95)	31.43 (1.28)	8.74 (1.59)
p-value			<0.0001
Week 24			
N	242	131	
Mean (SD)	39.9 (15.52)	31.6 (11.96)	
Median	38.0	29.0	
(Min, Max)	(13, 92)	(11, 79)	
Week 24 Change from Baseline			
N	242	131	
Mean (SD)	8.9 (17.49)	0.6 (15.40)	
Median	7.0	0.0	
(Min, Max)	(-43, 63)	(-52, 49)	

Statistics	KRX-0502 in Safety Control in Safety Assessment Period		Treatment Differences [1]
	(N=288)	(N=146)	
95% CI	(38.11, 41.70)	(29.18, 34.06)	(5.25, 11.31)
LS Mean (SE)	39.90 (0.91)	31.62 (1.24)	8.28 (1.54)
p-value			<0.0001
Week 36			
N	242	131	
Mean (SD)	39.8 (15.66)	30.4 (10.88)	
Median	37.0	28.0	
(Min, Max)	(14, 86)	(13, 67)	
Week 36 Change from Baseline			
N	242	131	
Mean (SD)	8.8 (17.47)	-0.6 (14.99)	
Median	7.0	-1.0	
(Min, Max)	(-57, 63)	(-45, 49)	
95% CI	(38.03, 41.57)	(27.95, 32.76)	(6.45, 12.43)
LS Mean (SE)	39.80 (0.90)	30.36 (1.22)	9.44 (1.52)
p-value			<0.0001
Week 48			
N	242	131	
Mean (SD)	40.6 (16.94)	29.4 (10.71)	
Median	38.0	28.0	
(Min, Max)	(13, 86)	(10, 74)	
Week 48 Change from Baseline			
N	242	131	
Mean (SD)	9.6 (19.25)	-1.5 (14.48)	
Median	7.0	-2.0	
(Min, Max)	(-45, 67)	(-48, 42)	
95% CI	(38.71, 42.49)	(26.85, 32.00)	(7.98, 14.37)
LS Mean (SE)	40.60 (0.96)	29.43 (1.31)	11.17 (1.62)
p-value			<0.0001
Week 52			
N	244	131	
Mean (SD)	39.4 (16.81)	29.7 (11.49)	
Median	35.0	28.0	
(Min, Max)	(7, 88)	(10, 72)	
Week 52 Change from Baseline			
N	244	131	
Mean (SD)	8.3 (17.97)	-1.3 (14.94)	
Median	6.0	0.0	
(Min, Max)	(-60, 62)	(-53, 43)	
95% CI	(37.48, 41.23)	(27.14, 32.25)	(6.49, 12.83)
LS Mean (SE)	39.35 (0.95)	29.69 (1.30)	9.66 (1.61)
p-value			<0.0001

**Note:** [1]. The LS Mean treatment difference and p-value for the change in Ferritin is created via an ANCOVA model with treatment as the fixed effect and Day-0 baseline as the covariate. Between-treatment differences are calculated as the LS Mean (KRX-0502) – LS Mean (control).

Only subjects with both a baseline and post baseline observations for the parameter of interest were included.

Summary of Mean Hemoglobin at Weeks 12, 24, 36, 48, and 52 and Change from Study-baseline by Treatment (ANCOVA method), Full Analysis Population – shown in Table 17:

**Table 17:**

Statistics	KRX-0502 in Safety Control in Safety		Treatment Differences [1]
	Assessment Period (N=288)	Assessment Period (N=146)	
Day 0 Baseline			
N	244	130	
Mean (SD)	11.61 (1.213)	11.72 (1.265)	
Median	11.45	11.70	
(Min, Max)	(8.7, 15.8)	(8.7, 15.7)	
Week 12			
N	231	128	
Mean (SD)	11.82 (1.375)	11.55 (1.268)	
Median	11.70	11.60	
(Min, Max)	(7.5, 17.4)	(6.7, 14.5)	
Week 12 Change from Baseline			
N	231	128	
Mean (SD)	0.19 (1.397)	-0.16 (1.522)	
Median	0.10	-0.05	
(Min, Max)	(-4.6, 4.0)	(-4.3, 3.5)	
95% CI	(11.67, 11.99)	(11.31, 11.75)	(0.03, 0.57)
LS Mean (SE)	11.83 (0.08)	11.53 (0.11)	0.30 (0.14)
p-value			0.0291
Week 24			
N	241	130	
Mean (SD)	11.55 (1.401)	11.47 (1.165)	
Median	11.30	11.40	
(Min, Max)	(6.6, 17.3)	(9.2, 15.4)	
Week 24 Change from Baseline			
N	241	130	
Mean (SD)	-0.08 (1.405)	-0.25 (1.394)	
Median	-0.10	-0.30	
(Min, Max)	(-6.3, 3.8)	(-2.9, 3.5)	
95% CI	(11.41, 11.72)	(11.23, 11.65)	(-0.14, 0.38)
LS Mean (SE)	11.56 (0.08)	11.44 (0.11)	0.12 (0.13)
p-value			0.3756
Week 36			
N	241	130	
Mean (SD)	11.54 (1.432)	11.31 (1.205)	
Median	11.20	11.20	
(Min, Max)	(8.6, 17.4)	(8.9, 14.9)	
Week 36 Change from Baseline			
N	241	130	
Mean (SD)	-0.08 (1.359)	-0.41 (1.577)	
Median	-0.10	-0.50	
(Min, Max)	(-5.1, 3.9)	(-3.8, 4.6)	
95% CI	(11.39, 11.71)	(11.06, 11.50)	(0.00, 0.54)
LS Mean (SE)	11.55 (0.08)	11.28 (0.11)	0.27 (0.14)
p-value			0.0482
Week 48			
N	241	130	
Mean (SD)	11.50 (1.502)	11.25 (1.296)	
Median	11.20	11.10	
(Min, Max)	(6.7, 18.2)	(7.9, 16.1)	
Week 48 Change from Baseline			
N	241	130	
Mean (SD)	-0.12 (1.395)	-0.47 (1.498)	
Median	-0.20	-0.30	
(Min, Max)	(-4.8, 4.9)	(-4.2, 3.5)	
95% CI	(11.35, 11.68)	(10.99, 11.44)	(0.03, 0.58)
LS Mean (SE)	11.52 (0.08)	11.21 (0.11)	0.30 (0.14)
p-value			0.0322

Statistics	KRX-0502 in Safety Assessment Period (N=288)		Control in Safety Assessment Period (N=146)		Treatment Differences [1]
Week 52					
N	244		130		
Mean (SD)	11.42 (1.474)		11.11 (1.403)		
Median	11.20		11.00		
(Min, Max)	(8.3, 16.6)		(7.1, 15.3)		
Week 52 Change from Baseline					
N	244		130		
Mean (SD)	-0.20 (1.326)		-0.61 (1.581)		
Median	-0.20		-0.60		
(Min, Max)	(-3.9, 3.7)		(-4.9, 4.6)		
95% CI	(11.27, 11.60)		(10.85, 11.30)		(0.09, 0.64)
LS Mean (SE)	11.44 (0.08)		11.07 (0.11)		0.36 (0.14)
p-value					0.0105

**Note:** [1]. The LS Mean treatment difference and p-value for the change in Ferritin is created via an ANCOVA model with treatment as the fixed effect and Day-0 baseline as the covariate. Between-treatment differences are calculated as the LS Mean (KRX-0502) – LS Mean (control).

Only subjects with both a baseline and post baseline observations for the parameter of interest were included.

5

Summary of Mean Serum Bicarbonate Concentration at Weeks 12, 24, 36, 48 and 52 and Change from Study-baseline by Treatment (ANCOVA Method), Full Analysis Population – shown in Table 18:

**Table 18:**

Statistics	KRX-0502 in Safety Assessment Period (N=288)		Control in Safety Assessment Period (N=146)		Treatment Differences [1]
Day 0 Baseline					
N	214		117		
Mean (SD)	23.92 (3.408)		23.65 (3.393)		
Median	24.00		23.00		
(Min, Max)	(13.0, 34.0)		(11.0, 32.0)		
Week 12					
N	190		101		
Mean (SD)	25.63 (3.358)		26.25 (3.481)		
Median	25.00		26.00		
(Min, Max)	(15.0, 36.0)		(16.0, 34.0)		
Week 12 Change from Baseline					
N	190		101		
Mean (SD)	1.57 (3.364)		2.41 (3.813)		
Median	1.05		2.00		
(Min, Max)	(-7.0, 13.0)		(-10.0, 14.0)		
95% CI	(25.17, 26.03)		(25.73, 26.91)		(-1.45, 0.01)
LS Mean (SE)	25.60 (0.22)		26.32 (0.30)		-0.72 (0.37)
p-value					0.0522
Week 24					
N	200		113		
Mean (SD)	25.39 (3.424)		25.66 (3.953)		
Median	25.45		26.00		
(Min, Max)	(16.0, 36.0)		(16.0, 34.0)		
Week 24 Change from Baseline		200	113		

Statistics	KRX-0502 in Safety Assessment Period (N=288)	Control in Safety Assessment Period (N=146)	Treatment Differences [1]
Mean (SD)	1.48 (3.499)	1.99 (3.854)	
Median	1.00	2.00	
(Min, Max)	(-13.0, 13.0)	(-6.0, 14.0)	
95% CI	(24.90, 25.79)	(25.15, 26.33)	(-1.13, 0.35)
LS Mean (SE)	25.35 (0.23)	25.74 (0.30)	-0.39 (0.38)
p-value			0.2974
Week 36			
N	212	117	
Mean (SD)	25.27 (3.152)	25.29 (3.700)	
Median	25.00	25.00	
(Min, Max)	(17.0, 33.0)	(17.0, 36.0)	
Week 36 Change from Baseline			
N	212	117	
Mean (SD)	1.36 (3.441)	1.64 (3.555)	
Median	1.00	1.00	
(Min, Max)	(-10.0, 16.0)	(-7.0, 14.0)	
95% CI	(24.82, 25.62)	(24.83, 25.91)	(-0.82, 0.53)
LS Mean (SE)	25.22 (0.20)	25.37 (0.27)	-0.15 (0.34)
p-value			0.6706
Week 48			
N	212	117	
Mean (SD)	24.81 (3.177)	25.24 (3.634)	
Median	25.00	25.20	
(Min, Max)	(15.0, 33.0)	(15.0, 34.0)	
Week 48 Change from Baseline			
N	212	117	
Mean (SD)	0.91 (3.614)	1.59 (4.081)	
Median	1.00	1.00	
(Min, Max)	(-12.0, 14.0)	(-9.0, 14.0)	
95% CI	(24.36, 25.20)	(24.74, 25.87)	(-1.23, 0.18)
LS Mean (SE)	24.78 (0.21)	25.30 (0.29)	-0.52 (0.36)
p-value			0.1458
Week 52			
N	214	117	
Mean (SD)	24.63 (4.049)	25.25 (3.871)	
Median	25.00	25.00	
(Min, Max)	(-9.0, 33.0)	(15.0, 35.0)	
Week 52 Change from Baseline			
N	214	117	
Mean (SD)	0.71 (4.369)	1.59 (4.668)	
Median	1.00	1.00	
(Min, Max)	(-37.0, 15.0)	(-9.0, 14.0)	
95% CI	(24.08, 25.11)	(24.60, 26.00)	(-1.57, 0.16)
LS Mean (SE)	24.60 (0.26)	25.30 (0.36)	-0.70 (0.44)
p-value			0.1117

**Note:** [1]. The LS Mean treatment difference and p-value for the change in Ferritin is created via an ANCOVA model with treatment as the fixed effect and Day-0 baseline as the covariate. Between-treatment differences are calculated as the LS Mean (KRX-0502) – LS Mean (control).

Only subjects with both a baseline and post baseline observations for the parameter of interest were included.

### Summary of Cumulative IV iron intake to Week 52 by Treatment, Full Analysis

Population, Method 1 to Handle Overlapping Doses – shown in Table 19:

**Table 19:**

Statistics	KRX-0502 in Safety Assessment Period (N=288)	Control in Safety Assessment Period (N=146)	Treatment Differences [1]
Average Daily IV iron intake based on the Cumulative IV iron intake to week 52 (Visit 4 - 21) [2,3]			
N	278	138	
Mean (SD)	2.96 (4.260)	4.86 (4.374)	
Median	1.86	3.84	
(Min, Max)	(0.0, 44.3)	(0.0, 24.2)	
p-value[4]			<0.0001

**Note:** [1]. The LS Mean treatment difference and p-value for cumulative IV iron intake is created via an ANCOVA model with treatment as the fixed effect. Between-treatment differences are calculated as the LS Mean (KRX-0502) – LS Mean (control).

5   **Note:** [2]. Average Daily IV iron intake based on the Cumulative IV iron intake to week 52 is calculated as the total Cumulative IV iron intake divided by the total number of days on study drug.

**Note:** [3]. The Method 1 to Handle Overlapping Doses is the following: For the overlapping doses will be pro-rated based on days to only include a dose for the period of time on study drug during the Safety Assessment Period.

10   **Note:** [4]. In the case where basic assumptions are not met for ANCOVA, the Wilcoxon Rank Sum Test is used to calculate the p-value, and the CI and LS Mean removed.

Summary of Cumulative EPO (ESA) Administered to Week 52 by Treatment, Full Analysis Population, Method 1 to Handle Overlapping Doses – shown in Table 20:

**Table 20:**

Statistics	KRX-0502 in Safety Assessment Period (N=288)	Control in Safety Assessment Period (N=146)	Treatment Differences [1]
Average Daily EPO (ESA) intake based on the Cumulative EPO (ESA) intake to week 52 (Visit 4 - 21) [2,3]			
n	280	141	
Mean (SD)	1077.67 (1291.384)	1309.85 (1342.258)	
Median	724.24	993.46	
(Min, Max)	(0.0, 11015.0)	(0.0, 8171.9)	
p-value[4]			0.0322

15   **Note:** [1]. The LS Mean treatment difference and p-value for cumulative EPO (ESA) intake is created via an ANCOVA model with treatment as the fixed effect. Between-treatment differences are calculated as the LS Mean (KRX-0502) – LS Mean (control).

**Note:** [2]. Average Daily IV iron intake based on the Cumulative EPO (ESA) intake to week 52 is calculated as the total Cumulative EPO (ESA) intake divided by the total number of days on study drug.

20   **Note:** [3]. The Method 1 to Handle Overlapping Doses is the following: For the overlapping doses will be pro-rated based on days to only include a dose for the period of time on study drug during the Safety Assessment Period.

**Note:** [4]. In the case where basic assumptions are not met for ANCOVA, the Wilcoxon Rank Sum Test is used to calculate the p-value, and the CI and LS Mean removed.

Study data also shows that KRX-0502 was able to reduce hospitalizations related to cardiac severe adverse events, as compared to Active Control.

Cardiac Severe Adverse Events Hospitalization Number of Subjects		
<b>Active Control (n=149)</b>	68	45.6%
<b>Ferric Citrate (n=289)</b>	100	34.6%
<b>Relative % Difference</b>		-24.2% p = 0.024

5

Total Hospitalization		Number Hospitalization per 1000
<b>Active Control (n=149)</b>	123	0.83
<b>Ferric Citrate (n=289)</b>	181	0.63
<b>Difference (% Improvement)</b>		-0.20 (24.1%)

	Ferric Citrate		Active Control	
	N= 289		N=149	
	n	%	n	%
Infections	35	12.1%	24	16.1%
Gastrointestinal Disorders	18	6.2%	18	12.1%
Cardiac Disorders	14	4.8%	13	8.7%

### Example 2

#### **A Study of KRX-0502 (Ferric Citrate) in Managing Serum Phosphorus and Iron Deficiency**

##### **5 in Anemic Subjects with Stage III to V Chronic Kidney Disease Not on Dialysis**

A phase 2, proof of concept, multicenter, randomized, placebo-controlled, open-label clinical trial is performed.

10 The study lasts approximately five to seven months, with approximately eight to 12 weeks being allocated for subject screening, two weeks for washing subjects out of their current phosphate binders (if taking them), and 12 weeks allocated for treatment with study drug, which is either the ferric citrate disclosed herein, or placebo. For purposes of this Example, the ferric citrate disclosed herein is referred to as KRX-0502 (ferric citrate).

15 The objectives of the study are to determine the efficacy and safety of KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) in managing serum phosphorus and iron deficiency in anemic subjects with non-dialysis dependent Stage III to V chronic kidney disease (CKD).

Up to approximately 200 subjects are screened to randomize approximately 140 subjects. Eligible subjects are randomized in a 1:1 ratio to either KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) or placebo. There are approximately 70 subjects randomized per treatment arm. The dropout rate during the two-week washout and 12-week treatment periods is approximately 20% and therefore approximately 110 subjects complete 12 weeks of treatment with study drug (KRX-0502 (ferric

citrate) or placebo). There are approximately 55 subjects completing 12 weeks of treatment with study drug (KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) or placebo).

The trial consists of three periods: screening, two-week washout, and 12-week treatment periods. It takes approximately eight to 12 weeks to screen approximately 200 subjects at 5 approximately 10 to 15 sites. The two-week washout period is only for subjects currently taking a phosphate binder.

The trial enrolls two different types of anemic Stage III to V CKD subjects. They are as follows: 1) Subjects with a serum phosphorus  $\geq 4.5$  mg/dL and  $< 6.0$  mg/dL who have failed a low phosphate diet and have not been initiated on any phosphate binder (de novo subjects) and 10 have a documented history of anemia; or 2) Subjects who are currently taking phosphate binders to manage their serum phosphorus and have a documented history of anemia. De novo subjects do not enter a washout period and subjects currently taking phosphate binders enter a two-week washout period. Following two weeks of washout, these subjects have a serum phosphorus  $\geq 4.5$  mg/dL and  $< 6.0$  mg/dL in order to enter the 12-week treatment period.

15 Enrollment is not stratified for de novo subjects vs. subjects currently taking phosphate binders.

#### ***Study Design/Methodology***

This trial is a three-period clinical trial consisting of a screening period, a two-week washout period, and a 12-week treatment period. After a subject is determined to be eligible for 20 enrollment, the subject is randomized to either KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) or placebo. Subjects are randomized in a 1:1 ratio to either KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) or placebo.

Subjects currently taking a phosphate binder are entered into a two-week washout period and, following the completion of the two-week washout period, are randomized to either KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) or placebo. Eligible subjects not taking a phosphate binder immediately start 25 on study drug (KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) or placebo). There is no washout period in this subject population. All subjects have a serum phosphorus  $\geq 4.5$  mg/dL in order to enter the 12-week treatment period.

After starting treatment with study drug (KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) or placebo), subjects are titrated to therapeutic goal (serum phosphorus between 3.0 to 4.0 mg/dL). If a subject has a 30 serum phosphorus  $\geq 6.0$  mg/dL for at least two visits in a row during the 12-week treatment period, the subject is considered a treatment failure, stops study drug and exits the study.

The use of IV iron and erythropoietin stimulating agents (ESAs) is not permitted during the two-week washout and 12-week treatment periods. If a subject's hemoglobin level (Hgb) is < 9.0 g/dL during the two-week washout, the subject is a screen failure. If a subject's Hgb is < 9.0 g/dL for at least two visits in a row during the 12-week treatment period, the subject is 5 considered a treatment failure, stops study drug and exits the study.

Serum phosphorus, serum calcium, serum creatinine (used to estimate glomerular filtration rate), intact fibroblast growth factor 23 (FGF23), intact parathyroid hormone (iPTH) and several hematological parameters (ferritin, TSAT, unsaturated iron binding capacity (UIBC), TIBC, serum iron, hematocrit (HCT) and Hgb) are determined at screening, during the washout 10 period, prior to the administration of study drug (KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) or placebo) at Visit 4 (Week 0), and weekly during the 12-week treatment period.

Urinary phosphorus is determined prior to the administration of study drug (KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) or placebo) at Visit 4 (Week 0), at Visit 7 (Week 4) and Visit 9 (Week 8) during the 12-week treatment period and at the end of the 12-week treatment period (Visit 11, Week 15 12).

The inclusion criteria for this trial are as follows:

1. Males and non-pregnant, non-lactating females;
2. Age > 18 years;
3. Stage III to V CKD subjects not on dialysis who have failed a low phosphate diet to 20 control serum phosphorus and: (i) are currently taking a phosphate binder to manage their serum phosphorus and have a serum phosphorus at screening > 2.5 mg/dL and < 6.0 mg/dL, or (ii) are not taking a phosphate binder and have a serum phosphorus level at screening  $\geq$  4.5 mg/dL and < 6.0 mg/dL;
4. Documented history of anemia;
- 25 5. Serum ferritin < 200 ng/mL and TSAT 20%;
6. Hemoglobin > 9.5 g/dL and < 11.5 g/dL;
7. Glomerular filtration rate (GFR) < 60 mL/min;
8. If currently on a phosphate binder, willing to be discontinued from current phosphate binder(s), enter a washout period and be randomized to either KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) or 30 placebo; and
9. Willing and able to give informed consent.

The exclusion criteria for this trial are as follows:

1. Parathyroidectomy within six months prior to Screening Visit (Visit 0);
2. Symptomatic gastrointestinal bleeding within three months prior to Screening Visit (Visit 0) and inflammatory bowel disease;
- 5       3. On dialysis;
4. IV iron administered within 60 days prior to randomization (Visit 4, Week 0);
5. Blood transfusion within 60 days prior to randomization (Visit 4, Week 0);
6. Kidney transplant or start of dialysis expected within three (3) months of randomization (Visit 4, Week 0);
- 10     7. Causes of anemia other than iron deficiency;
8. Serum parathyroid hormone >1000 pg/ml;
9. History of multiple drug allergies;
10. History of malignancy in the last five years (treated cervical or skin cancer may be permitted, upon approval);
- 15     11. Previous intolerance to oral ferric citrate;
12. Absolute requirement for oral iron therapy;
13. Absolute requirement for Vitamin C; however, multivitamins (i.e., Centrum, Nephrocaps, Renaphro, etc.) are allowed;
- 20     14. Absolute requirement for calcium-, magnesium-, or aluminum-containing drugs with meals;
15. Psychiatric disorder that interferes with the subject's ability to comply with the study protocol;
16. Planned surgery or hospitalization during the study (scheduled outpatient access surgery allowed);
- 25     17. Any other medical condition that renders the subject unable to or unlikely to complete the study or that would interfere with optimal participation in the study or produce significant risk to the subject;
18. Receipt of any investigational drug within 30 days of randomization (Visit 4, Week 0); and
- 30     19. Inability to cooperate with study personnel or history of noncompliance.

***Study Drug Administration***

KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) is supplied as 1-gram caplets of ferric citrate containing approximately 210 mg of ferric iron to those subjects randomized to ferric citrate.

Matching placebo is supplied to those subjects randomized to placebo.

All subjects are initiated on study drug with a fixed dose of KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) of

5 3 caplets per day (approximately 3 grams of ferric citrate as approximately 630 mg of ferric iron) or placebo (approximately 3 matching caplets per day). The target level for serum phosphorus is 3.0 to 4.0 mg/dL. Subjects are titrated as follows:

1. If serum phosphorus is at target (3.0 to 4.0 mg/dL), no adjustment in dose is required.

2. If serum phosphorus is < 3.0 mg/dL, the dose of KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) or placebo

10 is decreased by 1 caplet per day and the subject's serum phosphorus is re-checked within seven days.

3. If the serum phosphorus is > 4.0 mg/dL, the dose of KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) or placebo is increased by 1 caplet per day and the subject's serum phosphorus is re-checked within seven days.

15 The maximum number of KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) or placebo caplets per day is 12, or 12 g/day of ferric citrate. If a subject has a serum phosphorus  $\geq$  6.0 mg/dL for at least two visits in a row during the 12-week treatment period, the subject is considered a treatment failure, stops study drug and exits the study.

If a subject's Hgb is < 9.0 g/dL during the two-week washout, the subject is a screen failure. If a subject's Hgb is < 9.0 g/dL for at least two visits in a row during the 12-week treatment period, the subject is considered a treatment failure, stops study drug and exits the study.

20 Subjects take KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) or placebo orally with meals or snacks or within one hour after their meals or snacks. Subjects are instructed not to take KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) or placebo if greater than one hour has passed since the ingestion of their meals or snacks.

#### ***Statistical Considerations: Efficacy***

25 Change in serum phosphorus, ferritin and TSAT levels from baseline to end of treatment after 12 weeks are the primary endpoints.

30 This study demonstrates that KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) is statistically superior to placebo in managing serum phosphorus and iron deficiency in anemic Stage III to V CKD subjects, not

on dialysis, requiring phosphate binders from baseline (Visit 4, Week 0) to endpoint (Visit 11, Week 12).

Change in calcium x phosphorus product, serum calcium, estimated glomerular filtration rate (eGFR), urinary phosphorus, bicarbonate levels, serum iron, UIBC, TIBC, iPTH, and intact fibroblast growth factor 23 (FGF23) from baseline (Visit 4, Week 0) to the end of treatment (Visit 11, Week 12) are also assessed as secondary endpoints.

#### ***Statistical Considerations: Sample Size***

Up to approximately 200 subjects are screened to randomize approximately 140 subjects.

Eligible subjects are randomized in a 1:1 ratio to either KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) or placebo.

There are approximately 70 subjects randomized per treatment arm. The dropout rate during the two-week washout and 12-week treatment periods is approximately 20% and therefore approximately 110 subjects complete 12 weeks of treatment with study drug (KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) or placebo). There are approximately 55 subjects completing 12 weeks of treatment with study drug (KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) or placebo).

The ending serum phosphorus at Visit 11 (Week 12) is approximately 4.3 mg/dL in the KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) group and 4.6 mg/dL in the placebo-treated group. The common standard deviation is approximately 0.5 mg/dL. Based on these parameters, the trial has at least 80% power to detect a difference between the two groups (alpha = 0.05, two sided).

The ending ferritin level at Visit 11 (Week 12) is approximately 300 ng/mL in the KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) group and 150 ng/mL in the placebo-treated group. The common standard deviation is approximately 75 ng/mL. Based on these parameters, the trial has at least 80% power to detect a difference between the two groups (alpha = 0.05, two sided).

The ending TSAT level at Visit 11 (Week 12) is approximately 25% in the KRX-0502 (ferric citrate) group and 17% in the placebo-treated group. The common standard deviation is approximately 5%. Based on these parameters, the trial has at least 80% power to detect a difference between the two groups (alpha = 0.05, two sided).

#### ***Co-Primary and Key Secondary Endpoints***

KRX-0502 met both co-primary and all key secondary endpoints with highly statistically significant results. The Intent-to Treat (ITT) group included 141 subjects, representing all subjects who took at least one dose of KRX-0502 or placebo and provided at least one post-baseline efficacy assessment.

The co-primary efficacy endpoints of this trial were the mean changes in serum phosphorus and TSAT from baseline to the end of the 12-week treatment period versus placebo in the ITT group.

Mean Serum Phosphorus (mg/dL)	Placebo (n=69)	KRX-0502 (n=72)
Baseline	4.7	4.5
End of Treatment <sup>1</sup> (Week 12)	4.4	3.9
Treatment Difference p-value <sup>2</sup>		p<0.001

5

<sup>1</sup> Last observation carried forward was used for missing data.

<sup>2</sup> P-value is created via an ANCOVA model with treatment as the fixed effect and baseline as the covariate.

TSAT (%)	Placebo (n=69)	KRX-0502 (n=72)
Baseline	21	22
End of Treatment <sup>1</sup> (Week 12)	20	32
Treatment Difference p-value <sup>2</sup>		p<0.001

<sup>1</sup> Last observation carried forward was used for missing data.

<sup>2</sup> P-value is created via an ANCOVA model with treatment as the fixed effect and baseline as the covariate.

10

The key secondary endpoints of the study were the mean changes in ferritin, hemoglobin and FGF-23 from baseline to the end of the 12-week treatment period versus placebo in the ITT group.

Mean Ferritin (ng/mL)	Placebo (n=69)	KRX-0502 (n=72)
Baseline	110	116
End of Treatment <sup>1</sup> (Week 12)	106	189
Treatment Difference p-value <sup>2</sup>		p<0.001

15

<sup>1</sup> Last observation carried forward was used for missing data.

<sup>2</sup> P-value is created via an ANCOVA model with treatment as the fixed effect and baseline as the covariate.

Mean Hemoglobin (g/dL)	Placebo (n=69)	KRX-0502 (n=72)
Baseline	10.6	10.5
End of Treatment <sup>1</sup> (Week 12)	10.4	11.0
Treatment Difference p-value <sup>2</sup>		p<0.001

<sup>1</sup> Last observation carried forward was used for missing data.

<sup>2</sup> P-value is created via an ANCOVA model with treatment as the fixed effect and baseline as the covariate.

Mean Intact FGF-23 (pg/mL)	Placebo (n=60)	KRX-0502 (n=63)
Baseline	263	319
End of Treatment <sup>1</sup> (Week 12)	293	200
Treatment Difference p-value <sup>2</sup>		P=0.017

<sup>1</sup> Last observation carried forward was used for missing data.

<sup>2</sup> P-value is created via an ANCOVA model with treatment as the fixed effect and baseline as the covariate.

Mean C-Terminal FGF-23 (pg/mL)	Placebo (n=60)	KRX-0502 (n=63)
Baseline	511	468
End of Treatment <sup>1</sup> (Week 12)	579	316
Treatment Difference p-value <sup>2</sup>		p<0.001

<sup>1</sup> Last observation carried forward was used for missing data.

<sup>2</sup> P-value is created via an ANCOVA model with treatment as the fixed effect and baseline as the covariate.

10 KRX-0502 was also highly statistically significant in its mean changes at Week 12 versus baseline for all the above-mentioned co-primary and key secondary endpoints.

### ***Treatment Failures***

15 Patients were discontinued from the study if they had hemoglobin measurements <9.0 g/dL on two consecutive visits or serum phosphorus measurements ≥6.0 mg/dL on two consecutive visits following randomization. Treatment Failures in the study were as follows:

Treatment Failures (n)	Placebo (n)	KRX-0502 (n)
Hemoglobin <9.0 g/dL	9	1
Serum Phosphorus ≥6.0 mg/dL	2	0

***Safety and Tolerability Profile***

The safety population in the study included all randomized patients who took at least one dose of study drug. KRX-0502 appeared to be safe and well-tolerated in this Phase 2 study, with discontinuation rates of 19% and 32% in the KRX-0502 and placebo groups, respectively, including Treatment Failures. There were no study discontinuations due to hypophosphatemia in the study.

Serious adverse events occurred in six KRX-0502 subjects (8%) versus ten placebo subjects (14%). Two deaths were recorded in the study, both from the placebo group. There were no clinically meaningful or statistically significant differences in serum calcium levels and liver enzymes as measured by alanine transaminase (ALT) and aspartate transaminase (AST).

Examples 1 and 2 indicate that KRX-0502 can treat iron deficiency anemia without the deleterious effects of IV iron on LVH. Reduction of FGF23 and correction of hemoglobin can contribute synergistically and to the treatment of LVH and heart failure without the negative effects of erythropoietin stimulating agents (increased risk of morbidity and mortality) and IV iron (increased LVH).

Finally, it should be noted that there are alternative ways of implementing the embodiments disclosed herein. Accordingly, the present embodiments are to be considered as illustrative and not restrictive. Furthermore, the claims are not to be limited to the details given herein, and are entitled their full scope and equivalents thereof.

All references cited herein are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety and for all purposes to the same extent as if each individual publication or patent or patent application was specifically and individually indicated to be incorporated by reference in its entirety for all purposes.

## CLAIMS

1. A method of reducing mortality and morbidity related to adverse cardiac events in subjects with chronic kidney disease, comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a chronic kidney disease patient in an amount ranging from 1 g to 18 g.
2. The method of claim 1, wherein the chronic kidney disease patient is an end stage renal disease patient.
- 10 3. The method of claim 1, wherein the chronic kidney disease patient is a non-dialysis chronic kidney disease patient.
4. The method of claim 1, wherein the ferric citrate is administered in a tablet dosage form.
- 15 5. The method of claim 4, wherein the tablet dosage form comprises 1 gram of the ferric citrate.
6. The method of claim 1, wherein the adverse cardiac event is selected from the group consisting of: heart failure, ventricular arrhythmias, myocardial infarction, decreased left ventricular (LV) ejection fraction, sudden cardiac death, aortic root dilation, and a cerebrovascular event.
- 20 7. The method of claim 1, wherein the ferric citrate raises the hemoglobin level of the subject to a level above 10 g/dL.
- 25 8. The method of claim 1, wherein the ferric citrate reduces FGF-23 levels of the subject by at least 30% compared to baseline.
9. A method of reducing incidence or risk of adverse cardiac events in subjects with chronic kidney disease, comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a chronic kidney disease patient in an amount ranging from 1 g to 18 g.

10. A method of reducing incidence or risk of hospitalizations related to adverse cardiac events in subjects with chronic kidney disease, comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a chronic kidney disease patient in an amount ranging from 1 g to 18 g.

5

11. A method of reducing incidence or risk of sudden cardiac death in subjects with chronic kidney disease, comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a chronic kidney disease patient in an amount ranging from 1 g to 18 g.

10 12. A method of treating left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH) in subjects with chronic kidney disease, comprising orally administering ferric citrate to a chronic kidney disease patient in an amount ranging from 1 g to 18 g.

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/US 14/63643

### A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC(8) - A61K 31/295 (2014.01)

CPC - A61K31/295; A61K9/28

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

### B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC(8) - A61K 31/295 (2014.01)

CPC - A61K31/295; A61K9/28

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched  
Patents and NPL (classification, keyword; search terms below)

USPC - 514/502

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)  
PatBase (AU BE BR CA CH CN DE DK EP ES FI FR GB IN JP KR SE TH TW US WO), PubWest, Google Web  
search terms: chronic kidney renal disease failure CKD ESRD non dialysis adverse cardiac event mortality morbidity reduce decrease  
lower prevent ferric citrate hemoglobin level FGF 23 dose tablet

### C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	US 2009/0186939 A1 (Chan et al.) 23 July 2009 (23.07.2009), para [0005], [0023], [0025], [0039], [0056], [0086]	1-4, 6, 9-12
Y		----- 5, 7, 8
Y	US 2013/0274328 A1 (Le) 17 October 2013 (17.10.2013), para [0015], [0148], [0153], [0155]	5
Y	US 3,873,588 A1 (Osawa et al.) 25 March 1975 (25.03.1975), col 14, ln 23 to col 15, ln 2; Table 8.	7
Y	WO 2012/006473 A1 (Lewis et al.) 12 January 2012 (12.01.2012), pg 4, ln 11-22; pg 5, ln 5-14; pg 37, ln 25-26	8
A, P	US 2013/0345303 A1 (Poradosu et al.) 26 December 2013 (26.12.2013), para [0010]-[0013], [0015], [0019], [0022]-[0023], [0029], [0119], [0324]	1-12
A	US 2005/0203169 A1 (Moskowitz) 15 September 2005 (15.09.2005), para [0037], [0059], [0062], [0088], [0185]	9-11

Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C.

\* Special categories of cited documents:

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier application or patent but published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art

"&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

26 December 2014 (26.12.2014)

Date of mailing of the international search report

21 JAN 2015

Name and mailing address of the ISA/US

Mail Stop PCT, Attn: ISA/US, Commissioner for Patents  
P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450

Faxsimile No. 571-273-3201

Authorized officer:

Lee W. Young

PCT Helpdesk: 571-272-4300  
PCT OSP: 571-272-7774

## 摘要

公開了給予枸櫞酸鐵以降低和/或控制血清磷水平、提高血清碳酸氫鹽水平、改進一個或多個鐵貯存參數(例如提高血清鐵蛋白水平、提高運鐵蛋白飽和度(TSAT)、提高血紅蛋白濃度)、增加鐵吸收、保持鐵貯存、治療鐵缺乏症、治療貧血、降低對IV鐵的需要、減少對紅細胞生成刺激劑(ESA)需要和/或降低與慢性腎病患者的不利心臟事件相關的死亡率和發病率的方法。